



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 07024052 2

74
LEDOX LIBRARY



Dunckinck Collection.
Presented in 1878.



LE

5

7
r

111

A NEW
GRAMMAR
OF THE
GERMAN LANGUAGE,

CONTAINING

A complete syntax of all the parts of speech illustrated by numerous examples and exercises, to which is added a set of familiar dialogues.

BY

Dr. CHARLES BENJ. SCHADE.

ADAPTED TO THE USE OF AMERICANS.

BY

WM. L. J. KIDERLEN,

FIRST AMERICAN EDITION:

PHILADELPHIA:

PUBLISHED BY KIDERLEN & STOLLMEYER,
No. 64, South Fourth Street.

.....
1838.

Entered according to Law, by KIDERLEN & STOLLMEYER.



Printed by P. AUGUSTUS SAGE, No. 3 La Grange Street.

P R E F A C E.

THIS grammar, which was written for the use of Englishmen, appeared in print for the first time some years ago. It met with a good reception, and the whole of the first edition was exhausted within two years. The present is the seventh reprint of the original.— It was found necessary, however, to revise and improve, indeed, almost to re-write it, which has been done, and it now appears in its most improved form. It has received numerous amendments and additions, which will tend materially to facilitate the study of the German language. I trust that what I have said respecting this grammar, will suffice to recommend it to those who may wish to study the german. — I will only add, that when I first undertook the task,

•

it was my most ardent wish to render a service to the Americans, and that I shall consider myself amply rewarded, if my labour has not been in vain.

W. L. J. KIDERLEN.

PHILADELPHIA, December 1837.

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Introduction.	1 — 7
Chapter I. Of the article.	— 8
Chapter II. Of substantives.	8 — 11
Chapter III. Of the first declension.	12 — 14
Rules on the use of the cases.	15 — 16
Exercises on the first declension	16 — 19
Chapter IV. Of the second declension.	20 — 22
Exercises on the second declension.	22 — 24
Chapter V. Of the third declension.	25 — 26
Exercises on the third declension.	26 — 28
Chapter VI. Of the fourth declension	29 — 31
Exercises on the fourth declension	31 — 33
Chapter VII. Of the fifth declension	33 — 35
Exercises on the fifth declension.	35 — 37
Chapter VIII. Of the declension of proper names.	37 — 40
Exercises on proper names.	40 — 44
Chapter IX. Exercises on the indefinite article.	45 — 47
Chapter X. Exercises on the disjunctive or partitive article.	47 — 50
Chapter XI. Exercises of all kinds of articles.	50 — 58
Chapter XII. Of adjectives.	58 — 64
Rules on the use of German adjectives.	64 — 65
Exercises on adjectives constructed in German without article.	66 — 67
Exercises on adjectives declined with the de- finitive article der, die, das.	67 — 74
Exercises on adjectives declined with the in- definitive article ein, eine, ein.	74 — 76
Chapter XIII. Of the degrees of comparison.	76 — 81
Exercises on the degrees of comparison.	81 — 83
Chapter XIV. Of pronouns.	83 — 86

	Page:
Exercises on the personal pronouns.	86 — 100
Exercises on the possessive conjunctive pronouns	101 — 104
Exercises on the possessive absolute pronouns.	104 — 109
Exercises on demonstrative pronouns.	109 — 114
Exercises on interrogative pronouns.	114 — 117
Exercises on relative pronouns.	118 — 123
Exercises on improper pronouns.	123 — 126
Chapter xv. Of numbers.	126 — 132
Exercises on numbers.	132 — 135
Chapter xvi. Of verbs.	135 — 150
Of regular verbs.	150 — 162
Of verbs neuter.	162 — 166
Of compound verbs.	166 — 170
Of verbs reflected and reciprocal	170 — 173
Of impersonal verbs.	173 — 175
Of irregular verbs.	175 — 178
An alphabetical list of the irregular verbs of the German language.	179 — 195
Of participles.	196 — 198
Rules on the construction of phrases.	198 — 202
Rules relative to the use of the tenses.	203 — 206
Of the government of verbs.	206 — 212
Exercises on all kinds of verbs.	213 — 246
Chapter xvii. Of prepositions.	247 — 261
Exercises on prepositions.	261 — 264
Chapter xviii. Of adverbs.	264 — 275
Exercises on adverbs.	275 — 277
Chapter xix. Of conjunctions.	277 — 286
Exercises on conjunctions.	286 — 287
Chapter xx. Of interjections.	287 — 288
Exercises on interjections.	288 — 289
Chapter xxi. Of German punctuation:	289 — 293
Chapter xxii. Some German exercises in order to be translated from the German into English.	294 — 302
Chapter xxiii. Some familiar dialogues.	303 — 324

INTRODUCTION.

GERMAN GRAMMAR (die deutsche Sprachlehre) is a collection of rules, by which we attain to a perfect knowledge of the German language, to speak and write it correctly, that is, agreeably to the established practice.

In other respects the German grammar only treats of the high German idiom, which forms a band of union between the northern and southern parts of Germany, and is equally intelligible both in the north and south.

Speaking (sprechen) is the expression of our thoughts by means of words distinctly articulated by the voice.

Writing (schreiben) is the expression of our thoughts by the medium of signs, visible to the eye, traced on paper, or imparted in some other way, provided they be always permanent, and of course proper for the communication of our ideas in our absence.

A *word* (ein Wort) consists of one or more aspirations of the voice, conveying a notion or idea to the mind. A written word is the visible sign of an articulated word. A single inflexion of the voice is called a *syllable* (eine Sylbe). A word composed of a single syllable, such as *der, the, denn, for, nein, no*, is called a *monosyllable* (ein einsylbiges Wort). A word which has more syllables, such as *Ungerechtigkeit, Injustice*, is called a *polysyllable* (ein vielsylbiges Wort).

There are two kinds of syllables, *simple* and *compound* (einfache und zusammengesetzte). A simple syllable is a syllable, in which we only distinguish one single sound.

Compound syllables are those, in which we clearly distinguish two or more sounds.

The constituent parts or elements of syllables are called *letters* (Buchstaben). There are two kinds of letters, to wit, *vowels* and *consonants*.

Vowels (Selbstlaute or Selbstlauter) are letters, sufficient of themselves to constitute simple syllables. The Germans have six vowels, to wit, *a*, *Ä*, *e*, *Ê*, *i*, *Ï*, *o*, *O*, *u*, *U*, *y*, *Y*. The German *a* and *aa* is pronounced like the English *aw* in the words *pawn*, *claw*. The German *e* and *ee* is pronounced like the English *ey* in the words *grey*, *prey*. In many words it has the sound of the English *ey* in the words *convey*, *survey*. The German *i* has the sound of the English *e* in the words *here*, *mere*. The German *o* and *oo* is pronounced like the English *o* in the words *note*, *home*: for instance, *groß*, *great*, *Tod*, *death*, *loben*, *to praise*, *Loos*, *lot*, *Moss*, *moss*, *Schoos*, *lap*. In many words it has the sound of the English *o* in the words *come*, *done*. The German *u* is pronounced like the English double *oo* in the words *soon* and *boot*. The German *y* (ipsilon) has the sound of the German *i*.

The German sounds *ä*, *au*, *äut*, *ei*, *eu*, *ö*, *ü*, being quite simple, may in some measure be considered as vowels. Take notice, that the letters *ä*, *au*, *ö*, *ü*, when they are to be in capitals, are written thus: *Ä*, *Äu*, *Ö*, *Ü*, without any alteration in their pronunciation. *Ä* is pronounced like the English *a* in the word *hat*. *Äu* and *eu* have nearly the sound of the English *oy* in the words *boy*, *joy*, as *Feuer*, *fire*, *häufen*, *to amass*. *Äu* is pronounced like the English *ow* in the word *how*. *Ê* sounds as the English *y* in the word *my*. *Ö* and *ü* have a sound, which is best explained by oral instruction.

Consonants (Mitlaute or Mitlauter) are letters, which

are not sufficient of themselves, without the aid of vowels, to form any simple syllable, such as *b, d, c*.

The Germans have nineteen consonants, to wit, *b, B, c, C, d, D, f, F, g, G, h, H, k, K, l, L, m, M, n, N, p, P, q, Q, r, R, s, S, t, T, v, V, w, W, x, X, z, Z*. Their sounds are as follows: *bey, tsey, dey, ef, gey, haw, el, em, en, pey, koo, err, ess, tey, fow, vey, iks, tset*.

The German *c* sounds like *f* before *a, o, u, ü*, and this is also the case before consonants. Before *e* and *i* its pronunciation resembles that of the two letters *ts*, a particular stress being laid upon the *t*: for instance, *Ceder, Cicero; Tseder, Tsitsero*.

When the *ch* is accompanied by an *s*, it sounds like *x*: for instance, *sechß, Dchsen*; read *sex, Oxen*. In the words *nächst, Nächste* it retains its natural sound.

The *G* sounds in German as in English before the vowels *a, o, u*. It has the same sound before *e*, which is not the case in English. After *n* it has a nasal sound, which is best explained by oral instruction.

h is pronounced with a strong aspiration. When it occurs between two *e*, as in *sehen, gehen*, it is not pronounced. After the vowels *a, e, i, o, u* it serves to prolong the sound of syllables.

The *k* sounds almost as the English, but rather more stress and energy is conveyed in the sound. In most cases, where it is not pronounced in English, it retains its sound in German; it is pronounced for instance before the *n* in the words *Knoten, Kneipen* etc.

The *s* before *f, p* and *t*, in the beginning of words, is pronounced in the greatest part of Germany like the English *sh*: for instance, *Sflave, slave, Spiel, play, Stein, stone*. However this pronunciation is false; and this initial *s* ought to be pronounced like the simple English *s*, a practice,

which is also adopted by the learned of Westphalia and lower Saxony.

Sch sounds like the English *sh* : for instance, **Schutz**, *protection*, read *Shutz*.

The **v** has the sound of the English *f*.

The **w** is pronounced like the English *v*.

The **z** sounds always like the two English letters *ts* ; for instance, **Zorn**, *anger*, read *Tsorn*.

All substantives and all words used as substantives begin with capitals. The first word after a period begins likewise with a capital letter.

Take notice, that the Germans use in writing the characters, which are signed on the plates.

Many German works have, in later times, been printed in the Roman type : that practice, however, is hitherto not become general, and the greatest number of publications continue to appear in the German characters. Therefore, to render these characters familiar to the student, I have retained them in the German words, that have been introduced in the course of this Grammar.

A phrase (**ein Satz**) is a series of words, the combination of which presents an idea to the mind.

The German language is composed of nine kinds of words. These nine parts of speech (**Rebetheile**) are : article, substantive, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction and interjection.

The article (**das Geschlechtswort**) is a little word, made use of to determine the gender, number and case of the substantive.

There are three kinds of articles, namely, the *definite* (**der bestimmte**), *indefinite* (**der unbestimmte**) and *partitive* (**der Theilungsartikel**).

The definite article is a word used in order to denote

an object already known, or which has already been mentioned. In German it is *der, die, das* for the singular, and *die* for the plural.

The indefinite article is a word used in order to determine an object not known, or which has not been mentioned. In German it is expressed in the singular by *ein, eine, ein*; but in the plural they simply put the substantive, without prefixing any article.

The disjunctive or partitive article is used, to denote an indefinite part of a substantive. In English it is expressed by *some*; but the Germans name only the substantive, without adding any word, when they denote an indefinite part of a thing. For instance, *geben Sie mir Brod, Fleisch, Wasser*, give me some bread, some meat, some water.

A *substantive* (*ein Hauptwort*) is an appellation, by which we distinguish a thing or a person.

There are four principal things to be observed with regard to substantives, viz, the *gender* (*das Geschlecht*), the *number* (*die Zahl* or *das Zahlverhältniß*), the *case* (*der Beugefall*) and the *declension* (*die Abänderung*).

There are three genders in German, the *masculine* (*das männliche*), the *feminine* (*das weibliche*), and the *neuter* gender (*das sächliche Geschlecht*).

There are two numbers, to wit, the *singular* (*die einfache*) and the *plural* (*die vielfache Zahl*). The first is used to indicate a solitary and single object, and the latter, when the question is of two or more objects of the same kind.

Cases are called the different ways of employing the substantives according to the relations they bear to each other in phrases.

Declension is the variation of a noun through all its cases.

There are four cases in German, the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative* and *Accusative*. The *Vocative* which is used to express the object, we speak to, never differs from the nominative.

As for the declensions, there are five of them.

An adjective (*ein Beiwort*; or *Eigenschaftswort*) is a word made use of to distinguish the qualities attributed to the substantives. As the adjectives may be indiscriminately applied to masculine, feminine and neuter substantives, each of them is employed in all three genders. They are of course declined conjointly with their substantives, according to the number, gender and case of the latter.

The pronoun (*das Fürwort*) is a word employed to represent substantives. It is declined nearly in the same manner as the adjectives.

A verb (*ein Zeitwort*) is a word which assists us in explaining our opinions, or notions concerning substantives. When I say: *God is great*, the verb *is* indicates, that my mind attributes the quality of greatness to God. When I say: *my brother loves*, it is just, as if I said: *my brother is loving*. Thereby I pronounce a sentence or give my opinion, that is, I attribute to my brother the quality of loving.

It follows from hence, that there is, properly speaking, only one verb, viz, *to be*, *seyn*, on which account it is termed verb substantive; the other verbs are called *verbs adjective*.

The verbs undergo a great number of different modifications. To recite a verb in all these modifications, is to *conjugate* a verb (*ein Zeitwort abwandeln*).

An adverb (*ein Nebenwort*, or *ein Umstandswort*) is a word employed to qualify verbs, adjectives, or sometimes even other adverbs, that is, to point out some particular

circumstance therein. They are neither declined nor conjugated.

A preposition (*ein Vornwort*) is a word placed directly before substantives or pronouns in order to determine particular circumstances in phrases. They are also indeclinable.

A conjunction (*ein Bindewort*) is a word indeclinable, used in order to bind or connect the different parts of speech.

Lastly, an interjection (*ein Zwischenwort, or ein Empfindungswort*) is a word indeclinable, which serves to express certain rapid and sudden emotions of the soul.

FIRST CHAPTER.

OF THE ARTICLE.

The definite article is declined in this manner :

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	masc.	fem.	neutr.	through all genders.
Nom.	der,	die,	das,	die.
Gen.	des,	der,	des,	der.
Dat.	dem,	der,	dem,	den.
Acc.	den,	die,	das,	die.

The indefinite article is declined thus :

<i>Singular.</i>			
	masc.	fem.	neutr.
Nom.	ein,	eine,	ein.
Gen.	eines,	einer,	eines.
Dat.	einem,	einer,	einem.
Acc.	einen,	eine,	ein.

CHAPTER II.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

There are four kinds of substantives, *proper*, *common*, *collective* and *abstract*.

A proper noun (*ein eigener Name*) is one, used in order

to distinguish a single individual from all other things of the same description, as *Karl, Deutschland, Berlin*.

A common substantive or noun (*ein Gattungsname*) is one, used in order to distinguish, by a general name, all the individuals comprehended under one and the same species, as *Mensch, Thier, Vogel, Insekt*.

A collective noun (*ein Sammelname*) is one, which distinguishes, by a singular appellation, a certain number of individuals combined together, as *Wald, Flotte, Herde*.

Lastly, there are abstract nouns (*abgezogene Namen*), as *Tugend, Laster, Schönheit*.

The German substantives have, as I have already said, five modes of declension. There are some general observations to be made on all substantives of every declension.

1) The accusative feminine, and the accusative neuter are always the same as their nominative both in the singular and plural numbers. •

2) The nominative, genitive and accusative plural of all the five declensions are always the same.

3) In all declinable words of the German language a final *n* is added to the dative plural, if the word does not already terminate in the nominative plural in *n*, in which case the *n* of the nominative is retained in the dative case without any other addition. These three rules are common both to the declension of substantives and adjectives.

4) All substantives feminine, with the exception of some proper names, are indeclinable in the singular number.

The gender of substantives is distinguished by their termination, by rules, and above all by use.

The chief rules relative to the termination are :

1) Substantives terminating in *ung* are of the feminine gender, provided they do not consist of only one syllable.

2) This is also the case with substantives ending in *heit*, *feit* and *ei*.

3) Substantives terminating in *schaft* follow the same rule.

4) Substantives ending in *thum* are commonly of the neuter gender; except *der Beweis, the proof, a word not much in use; *der Irr, the mistake; *der Reich, the riches.***

5) Words ending in *niß* are mostly feminine; except *der Firniß*, the varnish, *das Zeugniß*, the testimony, *das Bekenntniß*, the confession, *das Begräbniß*, the burial, *das Verhältniß*, the proportion, *das Bildniß*, the portrait, *das Gefängniß*, the prison, etc.

6) Substantives commencing with the syllable *ge* are for the most part neuter. Practice will point out some few exceptions.

The names of gods, spirits, angels, men, the male part of animals are of the masculine gender; except *die Schil
ds
wache*, the centinel.

Those substantives that distinguish subjects of the female sex, such as goddesses, women, female animals, are of the feminine gender; except *das Weib*, the woman, *das Frauenzimmer*, the dy, ladies, *das Mädchen*, the girl, *das Weibsch*, the wench, etc.

The names of the greatest part of trees and flowers are of the feminine gender. Take notice, that the word *Baum* in German signifies a tree. It is of the masculine gender; hence it follows that compound substantives ending in this word are of the masculine gender, such as *der Kirschbaum*, the cherrytree. All the names of fruit-trees are of this description.

The *diminutives* (die Verkleinerungswörter) are neuter.

The names of towns, villages, as also the principal names of countries, are likewise of the neuter gender. The names of countries terminating in, *au*, not in *gau*, and in *ei*, are of the feminine gender.

The names of metals are of the neuter gender, except *der Stahl*, *the steel*, and some names of base metals.

The infinitives used as substantives, such as *das Vernachlässigen*, *neglecting*, are of the neuter gender.

Substantives composed of two words follow the gender of the substantive terminating the compound word; for instance, *der Pflaumenbaum*, *the plum-tree*. Observe, that the same rule also applies to those substantives consisting of a substantive and another word. It is then always the substantive that terminates the compound word, which determines its gender.

Some substantives have a double gender, and change with the gender their signification; for instance, *der Thor*, *the fool*, *das Thor*, *the gate*, etc.

The feminine of substantives is formed by adding the termination *in*, such as *der Fürst*, *the prince*, *die Fürstin*, *the princess*, *der Löwe*, *the lion*, *die Löwin*, *the lioness*, *der Gott*, *the God*, *die Göttin*, *the Goddess*.

Words representing a whole kind or species, independent of the sex, and nouns of species, the female of which has a particular denomination, are not susceptible of this change.

CHAPTER III.

OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

The termination of the substantives of the first declension in the nominative singular is *el*, *en* and *er*.

The genitive singular and the dative plural are only subject to variations. The letter *ß* is added in the genitive singular to the termination of the nominative singular, and an *n* is added in the dative plural to the termination of the nominative plural, with the exception of those ending in *n*, which do not undergo any alteration at all in the dative plural.

The substantives of the first declension are, for the most part, masculine; but there are also a good many neuter. The substantives feminine ending in *er* or in *el* are of the fourth declension, with the exception of two substantives feminine belonging to the first declension, viz. *die Mutter*, *the mother*, pl. *die Mütter*, and *die Tochter*, *the daughter*, pl. *die Töchter*. But they do not take an *ß* in the genitive singular.

Examples of substantives of the first declension with the definite article.

I. Substantive ending in *el*.

Singular.

- N. *der Himmel*, the heaven.
- G. *des Himmels*, of the heaven.
- D. *dem Himmel*, to the heaven.
- A. *den Himmel*, the heaven.

Plural.

- N. die Himmel, the heavens.
 G. der Himmel, of the heavens.
 D. den Himmeln, to the heavens.
 A. die Himmel, the heavens.

II. Substantive ending in *en*.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| N. der Degen, the sword. | die Degen, the swords. |
| G. des Degens, of the sword. | der Degen, of the swords. |
| D. dem Degen, to the sword. | den Degen, to the swords. |
| A. den Degen, the sword. | die Degen, the swords. |

III. Substantive ending in *er*.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| N. das Zimmer, the room. | die Zimmer, the rooms. |
| G. des Zimmers, of the room | der Zimmer, of the rooms. |
| D. dem Zimmer, to the room. | den Zimmern, to the rooms. |
| A. das Zimmer, the room. | die Zimmer, the rooms. |

Examples of substantives of the first declension
 without any article.

Singular.

- N. Wasser, some water.
 G. Wassers, of some water.
 D. Wasser, to some water.
 A. Wasser, some water.

Plural.

- N. Schlüssel, some keys.
 G. Schlüssel, of some keys.
 D. Schlüssel, to some keys.
 A. Schlüssel, some keys.

The substantives of the first declension terminating in *el* and having in the singular one of the vowels *a, o, u* in the syllable before the last, commute these vowels in the plural into *ä, ö, ü*. This change of the vowels *a, o, u* is called *der Umlaut*. For instance, *der Schnabel*, the beak, *die Schnäbel*, the beaks, *der Vogel*, the bird, *die Vögel*, the birds, etc. Except *der Buckel*, *Pudel*, *Haspel*, *Hobel*, *Strudel*, *Zobel*, &c.

The substantives of the first declension ending in *en* and *er* and having in the singular one of the vowels *a, o, u* in the syllable before the last, do not commute these vowels in the plural into *ä, ö, ü*. Except *der Garten*, *Ofen*, *Acker*, *Vater*, *Bruder*, *Schwager*, *die Mutter*, *Tochter* &c.

All these words have in the plural *ä, ö, ü*. *Der Faden*, the thread; has in the plural *die Faden* and *die Fäden*.

Some words belonging to the first declension take an *n* in all the plural cases, such as *der Bauer*, *Better*, *Gebatter*, *Stachel*, *Flitter*, *Pantoffel*, *Stiefel*, *Muskel*, &c.

Some names of peoples terminating in *er*, *ar* and *ul* take also an *n* in all the plural cases, such as *der Baier*, *Kaffer*, *Pommer*, *Tartar*, *Ungar*, *Mogul*.

Examples of substantives of the first declension with the indefinite article.

- N. ein Priester, a priest.
 G. eines Priesters, of a priest.
 D. einem Priester, to a priest.
 A. einen Priester, a priest.

- N. eine Tochter, a daughter.
- G. einer Tochter, of a daughter.
- D. einer Tochter, to a daughter.
- A. eine Tochter, a daughter.

Proper names belonging to the first declension, add, besides the common variation of the genitive, an *n* to the dative and accusative.

Example of a proper name of the first declension without and with the definite article.

- N. Peter, Peter.
- G. Peters, or des Peters, Peter's, of Peter.
- D. Peter, or dem Peter, to Peter.
- A. Peter, or den Peter, Peter.

Rules on the use of cases.

I. When a verb occurs in a phrase, the question arises immediately : who has done or suffered the action announced by the verb ? or to what substantive does the verb bear a relation ? That is, I must look for the subject of the phrase, and put the answer in the nominative.

II. Immediately after a verb, announcing an action already done, the question must be asked : whom ? or what ? That is, I must enquire after the object of the action, and put the answer in the accusative.

III. When I ask : to whom ? or to what ? that is, when I enquire after the final term of the verb, I must put the answer in the dative.

IV. When, between two substantives, that bear a different meaning, the preposition *of* is found in the singular

or plural, the second of these substantives is placed in the genitive.

Example.

1. Thus in the following phrase : the brother gave the key of the father to the coachman, the question arises immediately : who gave it ? The answer being the brother, I say in the nominative : *der Bruder gab*.

2. The brother gave what ? answer, the key ; this substantive must therefore be put in the accusative : *der Bruder gab den Schlüssel*.

3. The brother gave the key of the father. Between the two substantives key and father I find the word *of* ; the second of these substantives must therefore be put in the genitive case, and I must say : *der Bruder gab den Schlüssel des Vaters*.

4. The brother gave the key of the father. I still ask : to whom ? and I put the answer in the dative : to the coachman. I must therefore say : *der Bruder gab den Schlüssel des Vaters dem Kutscher*, or according to a way of speaking more usual in German : *der Bruder gab des Vaters Schlüssel dem Kutscher*.

Exercises on the first declension of substantives in *el*, *en* and *er*.

I.

The temple of the Diana at Ephesus was one of the seven wonders of the world. The situation of Hamburg is advantageous, for trade. We are insensibly trained on from one vice to another. Charon transported the shades in a boat over the styx. Women entertain themselves very

often with trifles. Francis the first, king of France, was the implacable enemy of the emperor Charles V.

*The temple, der Tempel.

of Diana, der Diana.

was, war.

one, eines.

seven, sieben.

the wonder, das Wunder.

of the world, der Welt.

the situation, die Lage.

of Hamburgh, Hamburgs.

is, ist.

advantageous, vortheilhaft.

for, für; preposition which

governs the accusative.

trade, der Handel.

We are, wir werden.

insensibly, unvermerkt.

from, von; preposition

which governs the dative.

one, einer.

vice, das Vaster.

to another, zum andern.

trained on, fortgerissen.

transported, führte.

the shade, der Schatten.

in a boat, in einem Boote.

It and über (over) go-

vern the dative on the

question : *where* (wo) ?

and the accusative on the

question : *whereto* (wo-

hin) ?

over the styx, über den

Styr.

woman, das Frauenzim-

mer.

entertain themselves, unter-

halten sich.

very often, sehr oft.

with trifles, mit Kleinigkei-

ten. Mit is a preposition

which governs the dative.

Francis the first, Franz der

Erste.

king of France, König von

Frankreich.

the implacable enemy, der

unversöhnliche Feind.

the emperor, der Kaiser.

Charles V., Karl der Fünfte.

II.

They say, that some French authors have written upon

*) In order to construe the phrases in the translation, the words must be exactly placed in the same order, in which they stand in the vocabulary.

the right use of human life. This book is written for the use of all who wish to learn the German language. Goethe, one of the most eminent German authors, has written the sorrows of young Werther in his youth. The name of Albert Durer ought to be dear to the artists.

They say, man sagt.	The	use, der Nutzen.
Germans say: one says,	of all who, Aller, welche.	
where the English lan-	the German language, die	
guage makes use of the	deutsche Sprache.	
third person plural.	to learn, zu lernen.	
that, daß.	wish, wünschen.	
some French, einige französ-	one of the most eminent, ei-	
sische.	ner der ausgezeichnetsten.	
author, der Schriftsteller.	has, hat.	
upon the right use, über den	the sorrow, das Leiden.	
rechten Gebrauch.	of young, des jungen.	
of human, des menschlichen.	in his youth, in seiner Ju-	
life das Leben.	gend.	
written, geschrieben.	The name, der Name.	
have, haben.	ought, muß.	
this book, dieses Buch.	the artist, der Künstler.	
for the zum (instead of zu	dear, theuer, werth.	
dem).	to be, seyn.	

III.

The days are short in winter. I have put him to silence. He has stolen my purse. Tell me the story of

The days, die Tage.	the winter, der Winter.
are, sind.	him, ihn.
short, kurz.	to, zum (instead of zu dem).
in, im (instead of in dem).	the silence, das Schweigen.

that Englishman. In the time of Augustus the Romans stood on the pitch of their glory.

put, gebracht.	länder.
he has, er hat.	in the time, zur Zeit.
my, meinen.	stood, standen.
the purse, der Geldbeutel.	the Roman, der Römer.
stolen, gestohlen.	on, auf, with the dative,
tell me, erzählen Sie mir.	the pitch, der Gipfel.
the story, die Geschichte.	of their glory, ihres Ruh-
of that, jenes.	meß.
the Englishman, der Eng-	

IV.

A forest is very pleasant in the heat of summer. The mason builds a house for the baker, and the baker bakes bread for the mason. The preservation of our life requires mead and drink. A good boy follows the advice of his prudent father,

A forest, ein Wald.	bakes bread, bäckt Brod.
very pleasant, sehr angenehm.	the preservation, die Erhaltung.
in the heat, in der Hitze.	of our, unser.
summer, der Sommer.	requires meat and drink, erfordert Speise und Trank.
the mason, der Maurer.	a good boy, ein guter Knabe.
builds, baut.	follows the advice, befolgt den Rath.
a house, ein Haus.	of his prudent, seines verständigen.
for, für; a preposition which governs the accusative.	
the baker, der Bäcker.	

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The second declension includes substantives of every termination, except in *el*, *en*, *er* and *e*. However the substantives neuter ending in *e*, the initial syllable of which is *ge*, belong also to this declension.

The substantives of the second declension terminate in the genitive singular in *eß*, and in the dative singular in *e*. These letters are added to the termination of the nominative. If the nominative terminates in *e*, the genitive has *ß*, and the dative is like the nominative.

The nominative, genitive and accusative plural add an *e* to the termination of the nominative singular, if the word does not already terminate in the nominative singular in *e*, in which case the *e* of the nominative singular is retained in the nominative, genitive and accusative plural without any other addition. The dative plural terminates in *en*.

The substantives which have an *a*, an *o*, or an *u* in the final syllable of the nominative singular, commute these vowels into *ä*, *ö*, *ü* in all the plural cases.

Examples of substantives of the second declension.

Singular.	Plural.
N. der Feind, the enemy.	die Feinde, the enemies.
G. des Feindes, of the enemy.	der Feinde, of the enemies.
D. dem Feinde, to the enemy.	den Feinden, to the enemies.
A. den Feind, the enemy.	die Feinde, the enemies.

Singular.

Plural.

N. das Gemälde, the picture.	die Gemälde, the pictures.
G. des Gemäldes, of the picture.	der Gemälde, of the pictures.
D. dem Gemälde, to the picture.	den Gemälden, to the pictures.
A. das Gemälde, the picture.	die Gemälde, the pictures.

Singular.

Plural.

N. der Thurm, the tower.	die Thürme, the towers,
G. des Thurmes, of the tower.	der Thürme, of the towers.
D. dem Thurme, to the tower.	den Thürmen, to the towers.
A. den Thurm, the tower.	die Thürme, the towers.

Observation.

I. They put frequently in the genitive singular an *s* instead of *es*; for instance, *des Gesprächs*, instead of *des Gespräches*. This *e* may be omitted or retained; but in some words it must be omitted; for instance, they say *des Schicksals*, and not *des Schicksales*. The *e* of the genitive may not be omitted, if it is difficult to pronounce the word. It must therefore be said: *des Tisches*, *des Stodes*, *des Rockes*, and not *des Tischs*, *des Stods*, *des Rocks*. This is also the case with the substantives which belong to the third and fifth declension.

II. The *e* of the dative is frequently omitted by the Germans; but this practice it not, at least very rarely, to be imitated. This observation is also to be applied to the

substantives of the third and fifth declension, which take an *e* in the dative singular.

III. It is a fault to add to the nominative plural of the substantives of the second declension an *r*. We must therefore say : Brände, Klöße, Cabinette &c., and not Bränder, Klößer, Cabinetter.

IV. Some masculine substantives of the second declension, and all the neuter ones, retain in the plural number the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, without making any alteration therein.

Examples.

Singular.	Plural.
der Arm, the arm.	die Arme, the arms.
der Hund, the dog.	die Hunde, the dogs.
das Jahr, the year.	die Jahre, the years.
das Metall, the metal.	die Metalle, the metals.
der Monat, the month.	die Monate, the months.
das Pult, the desk.	die Pulte, the desks.
das Ross, the horse.	die Rosse, the horses.
der Schuh, the shoe.	die Schuhe, the shoes.
der Tag, the day.	die Tage, the days.
der Turban, the turban.	die Turbane, the turbans.

Exercises on the second declension.

I.

Learned men carry their best treasures about them.
My spaniel entertained us for a time with many of his

Learned men, Gelehrte.	the treasure, der Schatz.
carry, tragen.	about them, bei sich.
their best, ihre besten.	my spaniel, mein Pudel.

tricks which I had taught him. The heads of those girls were trickt with flowers. Can you play with such trifles.

entertained, unterhielt.

the head, der Kopf.

us, uns.

of those, dieser.

for a time, eine Zeitlang.

the girl, das Mädchen.

with many of his, mit vielen

were, waren.

seiner.

with flowers, mit Blumen.

the trick, das Kunststück.

trickt, geschmückt.

which I, die ich.

can you, können Sie.

him, ihn.

with such, mit solchem.

taught, gelehrt.

the trifles, das Puppenwerk.

had, hatte.

play, spielen.

II.

Her folly repels me while her charms attract me. The hand of death is upon him. He killed her upon a mere suspicion. The rose yields a very agreeable smell. That is not to my tast. They have won him by presents.

Her folly, ihre Thorheit.

the rose, die Rose.

repels me, treibt mich zurück.

yields, giebt von sich.

while, während.

very, sehr.

me, mich.

agreeable, angenehm.

her, ihre.

the smell, der Geruch.

the charm, der Reiz.

that, dieses.

attract, anziehen.

to, nach, with the dative.

the hand, die Hand.

my, meinem.

death, der Tod.

the tast, der Geschmack.

is upon him, liegt auf ihm.

they have, sie haben.

he killed her, er tödtete sie.

him, ihn.

upon, auf, with the dative.

by, durch, with the accusative.

mere, bloßem.

the present, das Geschenk.

suspicion, der Verdacht.

won, gewonnen.

III.

The subject of this tragedy is taken from the bible. In every part of our body is air. I live, but animals live likewise. The butterflies live only one year. Trees and stones do not live. God has endowed my sons with several talents of which they make not the least use.

The subject,	der Gegen-	one, ein.
stand.		the year, das Jahr.
of this, dieses.		the tree, der Baum.
the tragedy, das Trauer-		the stone, der Stein.
spiel.		do not live, leben nicht.
from the bible, aus der Bi-		God, Gott.
bel.		my, mein.
taken, genommen.		the son, der Sohn.
in every, in jedem.		with several, mit verschiede-
the part, der Theil.		nen.
the air, die Luft.		the talent, das Talent.
I live, ich lebe.		endowed, begabt.
but, aber.		of which, von welchen.
the animal, das Thier.		they, sie.
live likewise, leben auch.		not, nicht.
the butterfly, der Schmetter-		the least, den geringsten.
ling.		the use, der Gebrauch.
only, bloß.		make, machen.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The third declension includes substantives, which for the most part are masculine. However there are also some substantives neuter, which follow this declension.

The determination in *el*, *en* and *er* is excluded from this declension.

The substantives the nominative singular of which ends in *e*, take an *n* in all the other cases both of the singular and plural. Those the nominative singular of which ends in any other letter, take the syllable *en* in the other cases of the singular and the plural.

The substantives which denote inanimate objects, take in the genitive singular the letters *ns* or *ens*, such as *der Name, des Namens*; *der Buchstabe, des Buchstabens*; *der Glaube, des Glaubens*; *der Schmerz, des Schmerzens*; *das Herz, des Herzens*.

The substantives neuter of the third declension, with the exception of the word *Herz*, are declined in the singular after the second declension. They take therefore the syllable *es* in the genitive, and an *e* in the dative. But the plural of these substantives is declined after the third declension.

Examples of substantives of the third declension.

Singular.	Plural.
N. der Däne, the Dane.	die Dänen, the Danes.
G. des Dänen, of the Dane.	der Dänen, of the Danes.
D. dem Dänen, to the Dane.	den Dänen, to the Danes.
A. den Dänen, the Dane.	die Dänen, the Danes.

Singular.	Plural.
N. der Mensch, man.	die Menschen, men.
G. des Menschen, of man.	der Menschen, of men.
D. dem Menschen, to man.	den Menschen, to men.
A. den Menschen, man.	die Menschen, men.

Singular.	Plural.
N. das Herz, the heart.	die Herzen, the hearts.
G. des Herzens, of the heart.	der Herzen, of the hearts.
D. dem Herzen, to the heart.	den Herzen, to the hearts.
A. das Herz, the heart.	die Herzen, the hearts.

Singular.	Plural.
N. das Ohr, the ear.	die Ohren, the ears.
G. des Ohres, of the ear.	der Ohren, of the ears.
D. dem Ohre, to the ear.	den Ohren, to the ears.
A. das Ohr, the ear.	die Ohren, the ears.

Exercises on the third declension.

I.

The courage of lions does them less honour than their

generosity. Princes often love flatterers, and flatterers often deceive princes. The diamonds were all rough.

The courage, der Muth, 2*)	often, oft.
the lion, der Löwe, 3.	the flatterer, der Schmeich-
does them less honour,	ler, 1.
macht ihnen weniger Eh-	deceive, hintergehen.
re.	the diamond, der Diamant,
than their generosity, als	3.
ihre Großmuth.	were all, waren alle.
the prince, der Fürst, 3.	rough, ungeschliffen.
love, lieben.	

*) The ciphers placed after the substantives mark their declension; the letters exc. after these ciphers indicate, that these substantives are excluded from the general rule.

II.

Geography and chronology are the two eyes of history. The Germans have many writers of merit. Princes, who are wise, love their subjects, and are beloved by them. The tongue is the interpreter of our thoughts.

Geography, die Erdbeschrei-	marty, viele.
bung.	the writer, der Schriftstel-
chronology, die Zeitrech-	ler, 1.
nung.	of merit, von Verdienst.
are, sind.	who are wise, welche weise
two, zwei.	sind.
the eye, das Auge, 3.	their, ihre.
history, die Geschichte.	the subject, der Unterthan, 3.
the German, der Deutsche, 3.	and are beloved by them,

und werden von ihnen ge-	of our, unserer.
liebt.	the thought, der Gedanke, 3.
the tongue, die Zunge.	exc.
the interpreter, der Dolmet-	
scher, 1.	

III.

Reason is implanted in the soul of man. His reason makes him lord of the earth, if he duly cultivates it. The elephants are docile. This accident weakened the resolution of our soldiers.

Reason, die Vernunft.	cultivates, anbaut, anwen-
the soul, die Seele.	det.
implanted, eingepflanzt, ge-	the elephant, der Elephant
legt.	3.
his, seine.	docile, gelehrig.
makes him, macht ihn zum.	this accident, dieser Zufall.
the lord, der Herr, 3. gen.	2.
des Herrn; nom. pl. die	weakened, schwächte.
Herren.	the resolution, der Muth.
the earth, die Erde.	2.
if he, wenn er.	of our, unserer.
it, sie.	the soldier, der Soldat,
duly, gehörig.	3.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

The fourth declension does contain almost all the feminine substantives of the German language.

The singular of all the substantives of this declension is indeclinable, and all the plural cases add an *n* or *en* to the termination of the nominative singular.

The substantives having in the singular one of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u* in the last syllable, commute these vowels in the plural cases into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. The plural of these substantives is declined after the second declension, and their singular is indeclinable.

Examples of substantives of the fourth declension.

Singular.	Plural.
N. die Schwester, the sister.	die Schwestern, the sisters.
G. der Schwester, of the sister.	der Schwestern, of the sisters.
D. der Schwester, to the sister.	den Schwestern, to the sisters.
A. die Schwester, the sister.	die Schwestern, the sisters.

Singular.	Plural.
N. die Gräfinn, the countess.	die Gräfinnen, the countesses.
G. der Gräfinn, of the countess.	der Gräfinnen, of the countesses.

CHAPTER VI.

D. der Gräfinn, to the countess.	den Gräfinnen, to the countesses.
A. die Gräfinn, the countess.	die Gräfinnen, the countesses.

Singular	Plural.
N. die Nacht, the night.	die Nächte, the nights.
G. der Nacht, of the night.	der Nächte, of the nights.
D. der Nacht, to the night.	den Nächten, to the nights.
A. die Nacht, the night.	die Nächte, the nights.

Singular,	Plural.
N. die Frucht, the fruit.	die Früchte, the fruits.
G. der Frucht, of the fruit.	der Früchte, of the fruits.
D. der Frucht, to the fruit.	den Früchten, to the fruits.
A. die Frucht, the fruit.	die Früchte, the fruits.

Observation.

I. The word *die Trübsal* has in the plural *die Trübsale*. The words *die Kur*, *die Flur*, *die Uhr*, *die Art* etc. have in the plural *die Kuren*, *die Fluren*, *die Uhren*, *die Arten*.

II. The words of the fourth declension terminating in *schaft* and *ung*, add in the plural the syllable *en* to the termination of the nominative singular, and do not commute the vowels *a* and *u* into *ä* and *ü*, such as *die Bruderschaft*, plur. *die Bruderschaften*; *die Endung*, *die Endungen*, etc.

III. The substantives of the fourth declension ending in *niß*, are declined in the plural after the second declension.

such as die Erkenntniß, plur. die Erkenntnisse ; die Bes-
 kummerniß, plur. die Beskummernisse, etc.

Exercises on the fourth declension.

I.

A delicacy of taste is favourable to love and friendship,
 by confining our choice to few people, and making us in-
 different to the company and conversation of the greater
 part of men. Tears are the prerogative of man.

A delicacy of taste, ein fei-
 ner Geschmack, 2.

the love, die Liebe.

the friendship, die Freunds-
 schaft, 2.

favourable, günstig.

by confining, weil er ein-
 schränkt. Einschränkung

must be put after the
 word people.

our, unsere.

the choice, die Wahl, plur.
 die Wahlen.

to few people, auf wenige
 Menschen.

and making us, und weil er

uns macht. Macht must
 be put after the word
 men.

indifferent, gleichgültig.
 to, gegen, with the accusa-
 tive.

the company, die Gesell-
 schaft, 4.

the conversation, der Um-
 gang.

of the greater, des größern.

the part, der Theil, 2.

the tear, die Thräne, 4.

the prerogative, das Vor-
 recht, 2.

II.

The very things of which we are apprehensive, often
 become the cause of happiness of a prudent person who
 places his reliance on Providence. Men are designed to

live together. Therefore the first of all sciences is that which shews how to live, that is, how to behave in the world.

The very things, gerade die Dinge.

of which we are apprehensive, vor welchen wir uns fürchten.

often become, werden oft.

the cause, die Ursache, 4.

die Quelle, 4.

the happiness, die Glückseligkeit, 4.

of a prudent, einer verständigen.

who, welche.

his, ihre.

the reliance, die Zuversicht, 4.

on, auf, with the accusative.

Providence, die Vorsehung, 4.

places, setzt.

designed, bestimmt.

to live together, zusammen zu leben.

therefore, daher.

is, ist.

the first, die erste.

of all, aller.

the science, die Wissenschaft, 4.

that, die.

which shews, welche zeigt.

how to live, wie wir leben sollen.

that is, das heißt.

how to behave, wie wir uns betragen sollen. Betragen

sollen must be put after the words in the world.

the world, die Welt, 4.

III.

When we are sick, we learn to know the value of health. Plants and other things are possessed of their qualities. Men will never believe one who has often been detected in a lie. They will not believe him even when he tells the truth. For they are accustomed only to hear lies from him.

When, wenn.	believe, glauben.
we, wir.	who, welcher.
sick, krank.	often, oft.
are, sind.	in, über, with the dative.
we learn, dann lernen wir.	a lie, eine Lüge, 4.
the value, der Werth, 2	detected, ertappt.
the health, die Gesundheit,	has been, worden ist.
4.	they will, sie werden.
to know, kennen.	him, ihm.
the plant, die Pflanze, 4.	even, sogar dann.
other, andere.	not believe; nicht glauben.
the thing, die Sache, 4.	he tells, er sagt.
are possessed, haben, with	the truth, die Wahrheit, 4.
the accusative.	for, denn.
their, ihre.	accustomed, gewohnt.
the quality, die Eigenschaft,	only, bloß.
4.	from him, von ihm.
will never, werden nie.	to hear, zu hören.
one, einem.	

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The fifth declension does contain a great number of substantives neuter, and some substantives masculine. These substantives end in a consonant, exclusive of the syllables *el*, *en* and *er*. The declension of their singular is like that of the second declension, that is the syllable *es* is added in the genitive singular, and the vowel *e* in the dative singular.

to the termination of the nominative singular. The nominative, genitive and accusative plural take the syllable *er*, and in the dative plural the letters *ern* are added to the termination of the nominative singular. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u* of the final syllable of the nominative singular are commuted into *ä*, *ö*, *ü* in the plural cases.

Examples of substantives of the fifth declension.

Singular.	Plural.
N. das Thal, the valley.	die Thäler, the valleys.
G. des Thaless, of the valley.	der Thäler, of the valleys.
D. dem Thale, to the valley.	den Thälern, to the valleys.
A. das Thal, the valley.	die Thäler, the valleys.

Singular.	Plural.
N. der Wald, the forest.	die Wälder, the forests.
G. des Waldes, of the forest,	der Wälder, of the forests.
D. dem Walde, to the forest.	den Wäldern, to the forests.
A. den Wald, the forest.	die Wälder, the forests.

Singular.	Plural.
N. das Volk, the nation.	die Völker, the nations.
G. des Volkes, of the nation.	der Völker, of the nations.
D. dem Volke, to the nation.	den Völkern, to the nations.
A. das Volk, the nation.	die Völker, the nations.

Singular.

Plural.

N, der Wurm, the worm.	die Würmer, the worms.
G. des Wurmes, of the worm.	der Würmer, of the worms.
D. dem Wurm, to the worm.	den Würmern, to the worms.
A. den Wurm, the worm.	die Würmer, the worms.

Exercises on the fifth declension.

I.

All times have produced men of distinguished merit. Women are the most charming class of society, that which comforts us in every respect, raises our minds, constitutes our happiness, and has no other vices besides those which we communicate to it.

All, alle.	in every respect, in jeder Hinsicht.
the time, die Zeit, 4.	comforts, tröstet.
have, haben.	our, unsere.
the man, der Mann, 5.	the mind, das Gemüth, 5.
of distinguished merit, von einem ausgezeichneten Verdienste.	raises, erhebt.
produced, hervorgebracht.	our, unser.
the woman, das Weib, 5.	the happiness, das Glück, 2.
the most charming class, die anziehendste Klasse.	constitutes, macht.
the society, die Gesellschaft, 4.	no other, keine andere.
that which, diejenige, welche.	the vice, der Fehler, 1.
us, uns.	besides those which, außer denen, welche.
	we communicate to it, wir ihr mittheilen.

II.

I hurt myself by rashness and thoughtlessness. I may easily do an injury to my limbs by this means. An ox is not in the world for nothing. It must serve man with its flesh, its skin and its horns. It is always for the good of the children, when their parents give them any prohibition or command.

I hurt myself, ich schade mir.	the man, der Mensch, 3.
by, durch, with the accusative.	with its, mit seinem.
the rashness, die Unbesonnenheit, 4.	the flesh, das Fleisch, 2.
the thoughtlessness, die Gedankenlosigkeit, 4.	its, seinem.
I may, ich kann.	the skin, das Fell, 2.
easily, leicht.	its, seinen.
by this means, dadurch.	the horn, das Horn, 5.
to my, meine, accusative.	serve, dienen.
the limb, das Glied, 5.	it is always, es geschieht immer.
do an injury, verletzen.	for the good, zum Besten.
an ox, ein Ochse, 3.	the child, das Kind, 5.
is not, ist nicht.	when their parents, wenn ihre Aeltern.
for nothing, umsonst.	give them any prohibition or command, ihnen etwas verbieten oder befehlen.
the world, die Welt, 4.	
it must, er muß.	

III.

The warm countries of Europe give birth to the generous olive-tree. Go into the villages, and ramble through the fields, in order to find an opportunity for doing good. The warm, die warmen, the country, das Land, 5.

OF THE DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES. 37

of Europe, Europa's.	ramble through, durchlaufe.
give birth, sind das Vaters land.	the field, das Feld, 5.
to the generous, des edlen, vortrefflichen.	in order, um.
the olive-tree, der Delbaum,	an opportunity, eine Gele- genheit.
2.	to find, zu finden.
go into, gehe hin.	for doing good, Gutes zu thun.
the village, das Dorf, 5.	

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

Proper names ending in *el*, *en* and *er*, are declined after the first declension.

The greatest part of all the other proper names is declined according to the singular of the third declension, except that their genitive ends in *s* added to the termination of the nominative, if the word is masculine and does not end in *e*, in which case the letters *ns* are added to the nominative. But if the word is feminine and terminates in *a*, it takes *'s* or *ens* in the genitive. If it ends in *e*, it only takes *ens* in the genitive.

Examples.

N. Wilhelm, William.	Pope, Pope.
G. Wilhelm's, of William.	Pope's, of Pope.

D. Wilhelmen, to William.	Popen, to Pope.
A. Wilhelmen, William.	Popen, Pope.
N. Sophia, Sophia.	Wilhelmine, Wilhelmina.
G. Sophia's, or Sophiens or der Sophia, So- phia's.	Wilhelminens, Wilhelmi- na's.
D. Sophien, or der So- phia, to Sophia.	Wilhelminen, to Wilhelmi- na.
A. Sophien, Sophia.	Wilhelminen, Wilhelmina.

The names of countries, towns and villages, which are all of the neuter gender, with the exception of some which are feminine, are indeclinable, and no article is ever prefixed to them, except when they are accompanied by an adjective. However they take an *s* in the genitive, if the nominative does not end in *s* or *z*. Examples: Europa, Europa's or Europens; Africa, Africa's; America, America's; Griechenland, Griechenlandes, or Griechenlands; Frankreich, Frankreichs; England, Englands; Hamburg, Hamburgs; London, Londons; Marseille, Marseilles; Rom, Roms. Paris has in the genitive: von Paris. Wherefore I must say: die Einwohner von Paris, or der Stadt Paris *), the inhabitants of Paris.

The names of countries which are of the feminine gender, are constantly declined with the definite article. Example: N. die Schweiz, Switzerland; G. der Schweiz, of Switzerland; D. der Schweiz, to Switzerland; A. die Schweiz, Switzerland.

*) When between two substantives which only signify one and the same thing, the particle *or* is found, it must not be expressed in German: the duchy of Saxony, das Herzogthum Sachsen.

OF THE DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES. 39

The name of God is thus declined : N. Gott; G. Gottes; D. Gotte or Gott; A. Gott.

Foreign words, which cannot assume a German termination, are simply declined with the definite article in all cases except the nominative. Example : N. Elisabeth; G. der Elisabeth; D. der Elisabeth; A. die Elisabeth. Their termination is not altered, when the article is omitted, except that an 's is added to the genitive.

Example.

N. Cícero, Cicero.

G. des Cícero, or without article Cícero's *), of Cicero.

D. dem Cícero **) to Cicero.

A. den Cícero, Cicero.

Proper names of men which end in a, o, u are all declined like Cícero. This is also the case with those which end in as and us, except that they do not add an 's to the genitive.

Proper names which end in s, sch, ß, z, take the syllable ens in the genitive, and en in the dative and accusative. Examples : Agnes, Agnesens, Agnesen; Kirsch, Kirschens, Kirschen; Voss, Vossens, Vossen; Fries, Friesens, Friesen; Döps, Döpfens, Döpfen; Franz, Franzens, Franzén.

All other proper names are declined like Wilhelm, Vo-

*) For instance, die Briefe des Cícero, or Cícero's Briefe sind sehr schön, the letters of Cicero are very fine.

**) For instance, man sagt vom (instead of von dem) Cícero, daß er ein sehr feigherziger Mann war, it is said of Cicero that he was a great coward.

pe, Sophia and Wilhelmine, except those of the first declension in *el*, *en* and *er*.

Rules.

I. On the question *whither?* after verbs implying a motion from one place towards another, the preposition *to*, which accompanies them in English, is rendered in German by the preposition *nach* before the names of towns and countries, if it be not the name of a country, which is of the feminine gender in German, in which case the preposition *to* is expressed by *in* with the accusative. Examples: *als ich nach Berlin kam* when I came to Berlin; *ist der Weg gut nach London?* is the road good to London? I shall travel over to England next year, *ich werde künftiges Jahr nach England reisen*; when I was tired, I read Coxe's travels in Switzerland, *wenn ich müde war*; so las ich Core's Reisen in die Schweiz.

II. On the question *where?* after verbs not implying a motion from one place towards another, the prepositions *at* and *in*, which accompany them in English, are rendered in German by the preposition *in* before the names of towns and countries. Examples: my brother is at Berlin, *mein Bruder ist in Berlin*; shall you stay any time in Germany? *werden Sie sich einige Zeit in Deutschland aufhalten?*

Exercises on proper names.

I.

Charles was with his father in the open field. The rain made them quite wet. This was unpleasant to Charles.

Gustavus was sociable. But Christian was a quarreller. The boys did not love Christian. But they certainly loved Gustavus. The mother of Gustavus was going to the market. Gustavus intreated her to bring him something on her return. His mother promised to do so. She returned from the market, and brought with her a great wooden bird for Gustavus.

Charles, Karl. Karl has in the genitive Karls, and in the dative Karln.

was, war.

with his, mit seinem.

in the open field, auf freiem Felde.

the rain, der Regen, 1.

made them, machte sie.

quite, ganz.

wet, naß

this was, dieses war.

unpleasant, unangenehm.

This word must be put after the words to Charles.

Gustavus, Gustav.

sociable, verträglich.

but, allein.

Christian, Christian.

a quarreller, ein Zänker, 1.

the boy, der Knabe, 3.

did not love, liebten nicht.

they loved, sie liebten.

certainly, gewiß.

was going, ging.

to, auf, with the accusative. the market, der Markt, 2.

intreated her, bat sie.

him, ihm.

something, etwas.

on her return, bei ihrer Rückkehr.

to bring, mitzubringen.

his mother, seine Mutter.

promised to do so, versprochen zu thun.

she returned, sie kehrte zurück.

from the, vom, instead of von dem.

and brought, und brachte.

for Gustavus. These words

are rendered in German by the dative.

a great wooden, einen großen hölzernen.

the bird, der Vogel, 1.

wit her, mit.

II.

The Jupiter of the heathens was the son of Saturn and the father of the gods. The victory of Hohenfriedberg crowned the soldiers of Frederic with glory. This king had acquired in the school of Voltaire his taste, and the art of sarcasm. The character of Rousseau was that of a misanthrope. Alexander the great was the son of Philip.

The heathen, der Heide, 3.	the sarcasm, der Spott, 2.
the gods, die Götter, 5.	acquired, erworben.
the victory, der Sieg, 2.	the character, der Charakter, 1. This word is declined in the plural after the second declension.
of Hohenfriedberg, bei Hohenfriedberg.	
crowned, krönte.	that, der. That of a misanthrope is better rendered by the adjective menschenfeindlich.
the soldier, der Soldat, 3.	of a, eines.
Frederic, Friedrich.	the misanthrope, der Menschenfeind, 2.
with, mit.	the great, der Große, 3.
the glory, der Ruhm, 2.	the son, der Sohn, 2.
this king, dieser König, 2.	Philip, Philipp.
had, hatte sich.	
the school, die Schule, 4.	
his, seinen.	
the taste, der Geschmack, 2.	
the art, die Kunst, 4.	

III.

Little James was in his infancy, when his father and his mother died. A man of quality took him after the death of his parents, and brought him up. He sent him to the school. But instead of going to school James ranged

about in the fields. James's benefactor was once taking a walk, and saw James in the fields. Wherefore he sent him away, when he came home.

Little James, der kleine Jakob.	and brought him up, und erzog ihn.
was in his infancy, war in seiner Kindheit, or war noch ein Kind.	he sent him, er schickte ihn to, in.
when, als.	instead of going to school, anstatt in die Schule zu gehen.
his father and mother, sein Vater und seine Mutter.	James ranged, schwärmte Jakob.
died, starben.	in the fields, auf dem Felde.
a man of quality, ein vornehmer Mann.	about, herum.
took him, nahm ihn zu sich.	the benefactor, der Wohlthäter, 1.
The words zu sich must be put after parents, Aeltern.	was once taking a walk, ging einst spazieren.
after, nach, with the dative.	saw, sah.
the death, der Tod, 2.	wherefore, deswegen.
of his, seiner.	away, fort.
	came home, nach Hause kam.

IV.

London, the metropolis of Great Britain, is the chief town of trade in the whole world. This city is very ancient. It is mentioned by Tacitus as a place of considerable trade in the reign of Nero, and hence we may conclude, that it was founded about the time of Claudius, and the year of Christ 42. The city of London has undergone

great calamities of various kinds ; but the two last were most remarkable ; that is the plague in 1665, which swept away 68,596 persons ; and the fire in 1666, which burnt down 13,200 dwelling-houses.

the metropolis, die Haupt-
stadt, 4.

Great Britain, Großbrita-
nien, 1.

the chief town of trade, die
vornehmste Handelsstadt.

whole, ganzen.

this city, diese Stadt.

ancient, alt.

it is, sie wird.

by, vom (instead of von
dem).

as, als.

a place of considerable trade,
ein bedeutender Handels-
platz.

in, unter, with the dative.

the reign, die Regierung, 4.

mentioned, erwähnt.

hence we may conclude,
daraus können wir schließ-
sen.

that it, daß sie.

about, um, with the accusa-
tive.

the time, die Zeit, 4.

the year, das Jahr, 2.

of Christ, Christi.

was founded, gegründet
wurde.

has, hat.

great, große.

the calamity, der Unfall, 2.

of various kinds, von man-
cherlei Art.

undergone, erduldet.

but the two last, allein die
zwei letzten.

were most remarkable, wa-
ren am merkwürdigsten.

that is, nämlich.

the plague, die Pest, 4.

in 1665, im Jahre 1665.

which, welche.

the person, die Person, 4.

swept away, wegraffte.

the fire, die Feuersbrunst,
4. der Brand, 2.

the dwelling-house das
das Wohnhaus, 5.

burnt down, niederbrannte,
verzehrte.

CHAPTER IX.

EXERCISES ON THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

(See Chapter II.)

Philosophy is a noble science. A brave and generous man never fights for an unjust cause. I know a woman who was ruined at gaming, and still continues to play. He scratched his own face with a thorn. Socrates saw once a libertine throwing stones at a gallows. Courage, my lad, cried he to him, you will not miss it. Man is not the sport of a blind destiny. He who has no tear for griefs of a friend, is unworthy of the title of a man. Mina had a little piece of gold. She took it out of her pocket and gave it to a poor woman. Joseph had been severely offended by a beggar boy. But he forgot the offence and made him a present of a coat. I have received a very fine letter from a worthy woman, which I have read with an inexpressible joy.

Philosophy, die Philosophie,	never fights, kämpft nie-
4.	malß.
noble, edel.	for, für, with the accusa-
the science, die Wissenschaft,	tive.
4.	unjust, ungerechte.
brave, wackerer.	the cause, die Sache, 4.
generous, edelmüthiger.	I know, ich kenne.
the man, der Mann, 5.	

- the woman, das Frauenzimmer, 1.
 who, welches.
 at gaming, durch das Spiel.
 was ruined, zu Grunde gerichtet wurde.
 still, immer noch.
 to play, zu spielen.
 continues, fortfährt.
 he scratched, er zerkratzte.
 his own face, sein Gesicht.
 with, mit, with the dative.
 the thorn, der Dorn, 2. in the plural die Dornen, 3.
 saw once, sah einst.
 the libertine, der Lauge nicht, 2.
 throwing, welcher warf. Warf must be put after the word gallows.
 the stone, der Stein, 2.
 at, nach.
 the gallows, der Galgen, 1.
 courage, my lad, nur zuge worfen, junger Mensch.
 cried he to him, schrie er ihm zu.
 you will not miss it, du wirst ihn nicht verfehlen.
 man, der Mensch, 3.
 the sport, das Spiel, 2.
 blind, blinden.
- the destiny, das Verhängniß, 2.
 he who, der, welcher.
 no tear, keine Thräne.
 for, für, with the accusative.
 the griefs, der Kummer, 1.
 the friend, der Freund, 2.
 has, hat.
 unworthy, unwürdig.
 the title, der Name, 3.
 Mina, Miendchen, 1.
 had, hatte.
 little, kleines.
 the piece of gold, das Goldstück, 2.
 she took it out of her pocket, sie nahm es aus ihrer Tasche.
 and gave it, und gab es.
 poor, armen.
 the woman, die Frau, 4.
 had, war.
 by, von, with the dative.
 the beggar boy, der Bettelknabe, 3.
 severely, sehr.
 offended, beleidigt.
 been, worden.
 but he forgot, allein er vergaß.
 the offence, die Beleidigung, 4.

EXERC. ON THE DISJUNCT. OR PARTI. ARTICLE. 47

made him, machte ihm.
the present, das Geschenk,

2.

of, mit.

the coat, der Rock, 2.

very fine, sehr schönen.

the letter, der Brief, 2.

from, von.

worthy, würdigen.

received, erhalten.

I, ich,

inexpressible, unaussprech-
lichen.

the joy, die Freude, 4.

read, gelesen.

have, habe.

CHAPTER X.

EXERCISES ON THE DISJUNCTIVE OR PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

I.

Give me some paper, pens and ink ; I want to write some letters, that they may send me some money. Bring me some sand, sealing wax and a candle. The merchant has no more sealing wax, but there are some wafers to sell. And when I have done writing, bring me some books, and tea. Don't forget to take some sugar, bread and butter.

Give me, geben Sie mir.

the paper, das Papier, 2.

the pen, die Feder, 4.

the ink, die Tinte, 4

I want to, ich will.

the letter, der Brief, 2.

write, schreiben,

that they, damit man.

me, mir.

the money, das Geld, 5.

may send, *schicke*.

bring me, *bringen Sie mir*.

the sand, *der Sand*, 2.

the sealing wax, *das Sie-
gellack*, 2.

the candle, *das Licht*, 5.

the merchant, *der Kauf-
mann*, 5. in the plural
die Kaufleute.

no, *kein*.

more, *mehr*. *Mehr* must
be put after sealing wax.

but, *aber*.

there are to sell, *man ver-
kauft*.

the wafer, *die Oblate*, 4.

when I have done writing,
*wann ich geschrieben ha-
ben werde*.

*After the conjunction,
wann, the verb, which
begins the second part of
the phrase, associates
along with it the particle
so, which is not expressed
in English. Say then :
so bringen Sie mir. This
is also the case with the
conjunctions *als*, *da*,
wenn, *obgleich*, etc.

the book, *das Buch*, 5.

the tea, *der Thee*, 2.

don't forget, *vergessen Sie
nicht*.

the sugar, *der Zucker*, 1.

the bread, *das Brod*, 2.

the butter, *die Butter*, 4.

to take, *zu nehmen*.

II.

If I had money, say many people, I would do much good to the poor. That may be ; but that is no occasion to have so much money for that. There is some beer, which is like some vine, and some vine, which is like some beer. There are many Germans, who are like some Frenchmen ; but there are few Frenchmen, who are like some Germans. What commodities do the Germans receive from the French ? They furnish them with excellent vines ; with oil of olives, capers, millinery and other articles. When one has to do with people, who possess

EXERC. ON THE DISJUNCT. OR PARTI. ARTICLE. 49

judgment and knowledge, one may lay aside those measures of caution, which must be observed with people of different character.

If I, wenn ich.

the money, das Geld, 5.

had, hätte.

say many people, sagen viele Leute, 2.

I would, so würde ich.

much good, viel Gutes.

the poor, die Armen, 3.

do, thun, erweisen.

that may be, daß mag seyn.

but, aber.

for that, dazu.

there is no occasion, braucht man nicht.

so much, so viel.

to have, zu haben.

there is, there are, es giebt.

the beer, das Bier, 2.

which, welches.

like, wie.

the vine, der Wein, 2.

is, ist.

who are like some Frenchmen, welche wie Franzosen aussehen.

few, wenige.

what, was für.

the commodity, die Waare, 4.

do receive, empfangen.

from, von, with the dative.

they furnish them, sie versehen sie.

excellent, vortrefflichen.

the oil of olives, das Baumöl, 2.

the capers, die Kapern, 4. plur.

the millinery, die Modewaren, 4. plur.

other, andern.

the article, der Artikel, 1.

when one, wann man.

with, mit, with the dative.

the judgment, der Verstand, 2.

the knowledge, die Einsicht, 4.

possess, besitzen.

to do, zu thun.

has, hat.

one may, so kann man.

those, jene.

the measure of caution, die Vorsichtsmaßregel, 4.

lay aside, unterlassen.

which, welche man.

with, bei, with the dative.
of a different, von einer an-
bern.

the character, die Gemüths-
art, 4.
must be observed, beobach-
ten muß.

CHAPTER XI.

OF ALL KINDS OF ARTICLES.

I.

Religion is the strongest tie of human society. The tie of our friendship is indissoluble. Poverty is one of the greatest evils of men; for the poor man is exposed to cold, hunger, and a great number of other inconveniences, which are unknown to the rich. But riches alone do not make a man happy, and he may be poor without being unhappy on that account. The source of true happiness is in the heart of man, and the greatest pleasure consists in the practice of virtue.

Religion, die Religion, 4.
the strongest, das stärkste.
the tie, das Band. The
word Band has in this
sense in the plural die
Bände. But if this word
signifies a ribbon, it has
in the plural die Bänder,
6. Der Band, the bind-

ing or volume of a book,
has in the plural die Bän-
de, 2. There are several
words, that have in the
plural two terminations,
by which their meaning
is altered; for instance,
die Bank, the bench, plur.
die Bänke; die Bank, the

bank, plur. die Banken ;	of the greatest, der größten.
das Gesicht, the visage,	the evil, das Uebel.
plur. die Gesichter ; das	the man, der Mensch, 3.
Gesicht, the vision, plur.	for, denn.
die Gesichte ; das Land,	the poor man, der Arme, 3.
plur. die Lande, countries,	is, ist.
and die Länder, 5. pro-	cold, die Kälte, 4.
vinces ; der Strauß, nose-	hunger, der Hunger, 1.
gay, plur. die Sträusse ;	to a great, einer großen.
der Strauß, ostrich,	the number, die Menge, 4.
plural die Strauße ;	of other, anderer.
das Wort, the word,	the inconvenience, die Un-
plur. die Wörter, 5. de-	gemächlichkeit, 4.
tached words, and die	exposed, ausgesetzt.
Worte, words combined	which, welche.
together : mein Bruder	the rich, (plur.) die Reichen,
lernt täglich zehn deutsche	3.
Wörter, my brother learns	unknown, unbekannt.
every day ten German	are, sind.
words ; ich kann meine	riches, der Reichthum, 5.
Gedanken nicht durch	alone, allein.
Worte ausdrücken, I can-	do not make, macht nicht.
not express my thoughts	happy, glücklich.
by words.	he may, er kann.
of human, der menschlichen.	poor, arm.
the society, die Gesellschaft,	be, seyn.
4.	without, ohne.
of our, unserer.	on that account, deswegen.
the friendship, die Freunds-	unhappy, unglücklich.
schaft, 4.	being, zu sein.
indissoluble, unauflöslich.	the source, die Quelle, 4.
poverty, die Armuth, 4.	of true, der wahren.

the happiness, die Glück-	consists, bestehet.
seligkeit, 4.	the practice, die Ausübung,
the heart, das Herz, 3.	4.
the greatest, das größte.	virtue, die Tugend, 4.
the pleasure, das Vergnü-	
gen, 1.	

II.

My son has a fault that will ruin him. Learning may purchase riches, but riches cannot purchase learning. The learning of a professor must be profound. Bentley was esteemed for the profoundness of his learning. It is not polite to give one a box on the ear. My eldest sister had a thousand good qualities ; she possessed no less a good heart than a fine understanding. There is a great difference between the German and French tongue. A Russian pronounces all tongues best. My brother has seen a thousand strange animals on his travels and voyages. He has purchased from the Dutch coffee, tea, sugar, cinnamon, pepper, tobacco, cheese and herrings. Those, who govern, are like the heavenly bodies, which have much splendor and no repose.

The son, der Sohn, 2.	learning, die Gelehrsamkeit,
the fault, der Fehler, 1.	4.
that, der.	may, kann.
him, ihn.	riches, Reichthum.
ruin, ins Verderben, stür-	purchase, erwerben.
zen.	cannot, kann nicht.
will, wird.	the professor, der Professor.

Take notice, that the	fine, vortrefflichen.
Latin words ending in or,	understanding, der Verstand,
are declined in the sin-	2.
gular after the first, and	there is, es ist.
in the plural after the	great, großer.
third declension: der	the difference, der Unters-
Professor, des Professors,	schied, 2.
etc. ; die Professoren, etc.	between, zwischen, with the
must, muß.	dative.
profound, gründlich.	German, deutschen.
be, seyn.	French, französischen.
was, wurde.	the tongue, die Sprache, 4.
for, wegen, with the geni-	the Russian, der Russe, 3.
tive.	pronounces, spricht aus.
the profoundness, die Gründ-	Aus must be put after the
lichkeit, 4.	word best.
of his, seiner.	all, alle.
esteemed, geachtet.	best, am besten.
it, es.	has, hat.
polite, höflich.	strange, fremde.
one, einem.	the animal, das Thier, 2.
the box on the ear, die Ohr-	on, auf, with the dative.
feige, 4.	his, seinen.
to give, zu geben.	the travel, die Landreise, 4.
my eldest, meine älteste.	the voyage, die Seereise, 4.
had a thousand, hatte tau-	seen, gesehen.
send,	he has, er hat.
good, gute.	from, von, with the dative.
the quality, die Eigenschaft,	the Dutch, der Holländer,
4.	1.
she possessed, sie besaß.	the coffee, der Kaffee, 2.
no less, sowohl.	the tea, der Thee, 2.
than, als.	the sugar, der Zucker, 1.

the cinnamon, der Zimmet,	govern, regieren.
2.	like, wie.
the peper, der Pfeffer, 1.	the heavenly body, der Him-
the tobacco, der Taback, 2.	melskörper, 1.
the cheese, der Käse, 2.	which, welche.
the herring, der Hering, 2.	much, vielen.
purchased, gekauft, erhan-	the splendor, der Glanz, 2.
dest.	no, keine.
those, who, diejenigen, wel-	the repose, die Ruhe, 4.
che.	have, haben.

III.

There are two affections implanted in our nature, hunger and thirst. These always point out to us the time for eating and drinking. We must eat till our hunger is appeased; we must drink till our thirst is quenched. He who eats more than is necessary to appease his hunger, is guilty of intemperance; he who drinks more than is necessary to allay his thirst, is likewise guilty of intemperance.

There are two ... implanted,	always, immer.
es liegen zwei ...	the time, die Zeit, 4.
the affection, der Trieb, 2.	for, zum (instead of zu dem).
our, unserer.	eating, das Essen, 1.
nature, die Natur, 4.	drinking, das Trinken, 1.
hunger, der Hunger, 1.	we must eat, wir müssen es-
the thirst, der Durst, 2.	sen.
these, diese.	till, bis.
point out to us, bestimmen	our, unser.
uns.	appeased, gestillt.

is, ist.
 drink, trinken.
 quenched, gelöscht.
 he who, wer.
 more, mehr.
 eats, ißt.
 than, als.
 necessary, nöthig.
 his, seinen.

to, zu
 appease, stillen.
 is, macht sich.
 the intemperance, die Un-
 mäßigkeit, 4.
 guilty, schuldig.
 drinks, trinkt.
 to allay, zu löschen.
 likewise, gleichfalls.

IV.

Calamity calls out the fortitude that distinguishes a spirit truly noble. Love that deserves the name, obliges the lover to seek the satisfaction of the beloved object more than his own. Heroes have their fits of fear, cowards their brave moments, and virtuous women their critical moments.

Calamity, das Unglück, 2.
 calls out, erfordert.
 the fortitude, die Seelenstärke, 1.
 that, welche.
 truly noble, wahrhaft edlen.
 the spirit, der Geist, 5.
 distinguishes, kenntlich
 macht.
 the love, die Liebe, 4.
 deserves, verdient.
 the name, der Name, 3.
 obliges, legt . . . die Ver-
 bindlichkeit auf, with the
 dative.

the lover, der Liebende, 3.
 the satisfaction, das Vergnü-
 gen, 1.
 beloved, geliebten.
 the object, der Gegenstand,
 2.
 more, mehr.
 than his own, als sein eige-
 nes.
 to seek, zu suchen.
 the hero, der Held, 3.
 have, haben.
 their, ihre.
 the fit, der Anfall, 2.
 of, von.

the fear, die Furcht, 4.

the coward, der feige Mensch,

3.

brave, muthigen.

the moment, der Augenblick,

2.

virtuous, tugendhafte.

the woman, das Frauenzimmer, 1.

critical, bedenklichen.

V.

Henry the great, king of France, was walking one day along with the duke of Mayenne, who had disputed with him the possession of the crown. This gentleman was a bad walker, because he was very lusty. The king took a delight in tiring him out by walking very fast with him a long time. On the return from their walk, my cousin, said Henry the fourth to him, this is the only revenge I shall ever take on you.

Henry, Heinrich.

the great, der Große, 3.

the king, der König, 2.

of, von.

France, Frankreich.

was walking, ging spazieren.

Spazieren must be put
after Mayenne.

one day, eines Tages.

along with, mit, (dat.).

the duke, der Herzog, 2.

who, welcher.

with him, ihm.

the possession, der Besitz, 2.

the crown, die Krone, 4.

had disputed, streitig gemacht hatte.

this gentleman, dieser Herr.
was, war.

the walker, der Fußgänger,
1.

because he, weil er.

very lusty, sehr stark, sehr
fett.

was, war.

took, fand.

the delight, das Vergnügen,
1.

in tiring him out, daran, ihn
müde zu machen.

by, indem er.	the walk, der Spaziergang,
long, lange.	2.
the time, die Zeit, 4	said Henry the fourth to him,
with him, mit ihm.	sagte Heinrich der Vierte
very fast, sehr geschwind.	zu ihm.
walking, spazieren ging.	my cousin, mein Vetter, 1.
on, bei, with the dative.	this is the only revenge, die-
the return, die Rückkehr, 4.	ses ist die einzige Rache.
from, von, with the dative.	I ever, die ich jemals.
their, ihrem.	on you, an Ihnen.
	shall take, ausüben werde.

VI.

Somebody desired to be introduced to Alexander, king of Macedonia, in order to shew him a feat of art, which consisted in throwing from a certain distance a lentil through the eye of a needle. He expected a considerable reward for it. When Alexander had seen his trick, he made him a present of a bushel of lentils, that he might exercise himself in this fine art.

Somebody, Jemand.	which, welches.
desired, verlangte.	in, darin.
to, vor, with the accusative.	consisted, bestand, daß er.
of Macedonia, von Macedo-	from, aus, (dat.)
nien.	certain, gewissen.
to be introduced, geführt zu	the distance, die Entfernung,
werden.	4.
in order, um.	the lentil, die Linse, 4.
him, (dat.) ihm,	through, durch (accus.).
the feat of art, das Kunst-	the eye of a needle, ein Na-
stück, 2.	delöhr, 2.
to shew, zu zeigen.	throwing, warf.

he expected, er erwartete	the present, das Geschenk,
or er versprach sich.	2.
for it, dafür.	of, mit, (dat.).
considerable, ansehnliche.	the bushel, der Scheffel, 1.
the reward, die Belohnung.	of lentils, Linsen.
when, nachdem.	that he himself, damit er sich.
his trick, sein Kunststück	in this fine, in dieser schönen.
had seen, gesehen hatte.	the art, die Kunst, 4.
he made him, machte er ihm.	might exercise, üben könnte.

CHAPTER XII.

OF ADJECTIVES.

There are two principal ways of employing German adjectives.

The first mode of using them is, when they are employed without being prefixed to a substantive, or when they are simply connected therewith by means of a verb; for instance, gut, good; der Garten ist groß, the garden is large. An adjective employed in this manner is not at all declined, and may be called an *adjective absolute*, or in its primary state,

The second mode of using German adjectives is, when they are immediately prefixed to a substantive without the aid of any verb; for instance, ein großer Mann, a great man; eine schöne Stimme, a fine voice; ein gutes Weib, a good wife. An adjective employed in this manner is declined, and may be termed a *constructive adjective*.

There are three ways of declining constructive adjectives : 1. without article ; 2. with the definite article *der*, *die*, *das* ; 3. with the indefinite article, *ein*, *eine*, *ein*, and with some pronouns.

I. Declension of adjectives constructed in German without article.

Gut, good.

Singular.	Masculine.
N. guter Wein,	good vine.
G. gutes Weines,	of good vine.
D. gutem Weine,	to good vine.
A. guten Wein,	good vine.

Singular.	Feminine.
N. gute Mutter,	good mother.
G. guter Mutter,	of good mother.
D. guter Mutter,	to good mother.
G. gute Mutter,	good mother.

Singular.	Neuter.
N. gutes Kind,	good child.
G. gutes Kindes,	of good child.
D. gutem Kinde,	to good child.
A. gutes Kind,	good child.

Plural for all three genders.

N. gute Weine, Mütter, Kinder, good vines, mothers, children.

- G. guter Weine, Mütter, Kinder, of good vines,
'mothers, children.
D. guten Weinen, Müttern, Kindern, to good vines,
mothers, children.
A. gute Weine, Mütter, Kinder, good vines, mothers,
children.

Observation.

When two or more adjectives are immediately prefixed to a substantive masculine or neuter, the first of them takes, according to the rule, in the genitive singular *es*, in the dative singular *em*, and in the genitive plural *er*; but the other adjectives take in these two cases and in the genitive plural *en*. Example: N. sing. guter rother Wein; G. guten rothen Weines; D. gutem rothem Weine; G. pl. guter rothen Weine; N. sing. ein anderer guter Mensch; G. eines andern guten Menschen; D. einem andern guten Menschen; G. plur. anderer guten Menschen. In the same manner are declined: N. sing. dieser, or jener gute Mensch; dieses, or jenes guten Menschen; D. diesem, or jenem guten Menschen; G. plur. dieser, or jener guten Menschen; N. sing. welcher gute Mensch? G. welches guten Menschen? D. welchem guten Menschen? G. plur. welcher guten Menschen? Take notice, that constructive adjectives being of the masculine gender take in the nominative singular the termination *e*, when the pronouns *welcher*, *dieser*, *jener*, *derselbe*, *jeder*, *mancher* are prefixed to them: *dieser*, or *jener gute Mensch*; *mancher fromme Mann*; *jeder wahre Christ*, etc.

II. Declension of constructive adjectives with the definite article *der, die, das*.

Groß, great.

Singular,	Masculine.
N. <i>der große Mann,</i>	the great man.
G. <i>des großen Mannes,</i>	of the great man.
D. <i>dem großen Manne,</i>	to the great man.
A. <i>den großen Mann,</i>	the great man.

Singular.	Feminine.
N. <i>die große Stadt,</i>	the great town
G. <i>der großen Stadt,</i>	of the great town.
D. <i>der großen Stadt,</i>	to the great town.
A. <i>die große Stadt,</i>	the great town.

Singular.	Neuter.
N. <i>das große Verbrechen,</i>	the great crime.
G. <i>des großen Verbrechens,</i>	of the great crime.
D. <i>dem großen Verbrechen,</i>	to the great crime.
A. <i>das große Verbrechen,</i>	the great crime.

Plural.	Masculine.
N. <i>die großen Männer,</i>	the great men.
G. <i>der großen Männer,</i>	of the great men.
D. <i>den großen Männern;</i>	to the great men.
A. <i>die großen Männer,</i>	the great men.

Plural.	Feminine.
N. die großen Städte,	the great towns.
G. der großen Städte,	of the great towns.
D. den großen Städten,	to the great towns.
. die großen Städte,	the great towns.

Plural.	Neuter.
N. die großen Verbrechen,	the great crimes.
G. der großen Verbrechen,	of the great crimes.
D. den großen Verbrechen,	to the great crimes.
A. die großen Verbrechen,	the great crimes.

These instances of constructive adjectives declined with the definite article *der, die, das* shew, that they take in the nominative singular, and when they are connected with a substantive feminine or neuter, also in the accusative singular an *e*. In all the other cases both of the singular and plural they have an *en*. This is also the case, when two or more adjectives are associated with a substantive ; for instance, N. sing. *der fluge, tapfere Mann* ; G. *des flugen, tapferen or tapfern Mannes*, etc. ; N. plur. *die flugen, tapferen or tapfern Männer*, etc. An adjective immediately prefixed to a substantive without article, takes the last letters of the article *der, die, das*, namely, *r, e, s* in the nominative, *es* and *er* in the genitive, *em* and *er* in the dative, *en, e* and *es* in the accusative singular. The plural has the terminations *e, er* and *en*. For instance, N. sing. *mancher Mann ; manche Frau ; manches Kind* ; G. *manches Mannes ; mancher Frau ; manches Kindes* ; D. *manchem Manne ; mancher Frau ; manchem Kinde* ; A. *manchen Mann ; manche Frau ; manches Kind* ;

N. plur. *manche Männer, Frauen, Kinder* ; G. *mancher Männer, Frauen, Kinder* ; D. *manchen Männern, Frauen, Kindern* ; A. *manche Männer, Frauen, Kinder*.

When the pronouns *welcher, dieser, jener, derselbe, jeder, mancher* are prefixed to constructive adjectives, their declension is like that of the words *der große Mann* ; *die große Stadt* ; *das große Verbrechen*. In the same manner constructive adjectives are declined, when the plural of the possessive pronouns *mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer*, that of the improper pronoun *kein*, and that of the personal pronouns is prefixed to them : *meine, deine, seine, ihre, unsere, eure guten Söhne, Töchter, Kinder* ; *es giebt keine wahren Freuden ohne Tugend* ; *wir, ihr armen Menschen*.

III. Declension of constructive adjectives with the indefinite article *ein, eine, ein*.

Jung, young.

Masculine.

- N. *ein junger Mann, a young man.*
- G. *eines jungen Mannes, of a young man.*
- D. *einem jungen Manne, to a young man.*
- A. *einen jungen Mann, a young man.*

Feminine.

- N. *eine junge Frau, a young woman.*
- G. *einer jungen Frau, of a young woman.*
- D. *einer jungen Frau, to a young woman.*
- A. *eine junge Frau, a young woman.*

Neuter.

- N. ein junges Kind, a young child.
 G. eines jungen Kindes, of a young child.
 C. einem jungen Kinde, to a young child.
 A. ein junges Kind, a young child.

These instances shew, that the masculine has in the nominative singular the termination *er*, and in all the other cases *en*; that the feminine ends in the nominative and accusative in *e*, and the neuter in the same cases in *es*, and that the feminine and the neuter have in the other cases *en*.

Constructive adjectives are declined in the same manner along with the words *wenig*, *viel*, *mehr*; with the singular of the improper pronoun *sein*; with that of the possessive pronouns *mein*, *dein*, *sein* etc., and with that of the personal pronouns: *wenig frisches Brod*; *viel schönes Geld*; *mehr guter Wein*; *kein geschickter Mann*; *mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer guter Bruder*; *ich unglücklicher Mensch*; *du frommes Kind*; *Sie gelehrter Mann*.

Rules on the use of German adjectives.

I. The German adjectives in their constructive sense or state must agree with their substantive in gender, number, and case, and are always placed directly before their substantive, and directly after the article of the same: *der gute Knabe*, the good boy; *die schöne Blume*, the fine flower; *eine spröde Miene*, a prudish air.

II. Words, immediately relating to an adjective, are put directly before the adjective: *dieses war sehr großmüthig von ihm*, this was very generous in him; *dieses ist eine ganz andere Sache*, this is quite another affair; *ein gründlich gelehrter Mann*, a profoundly learned man.

III. Adjectives distinguishing proper names, are placed after them: *Alexander der Große*, Alexander the great; *Ludwig der Vierzehnte*, Lewis the fourteenth.

IV. All German adjectives, also those which are derived from names of countries or towns, are written with a small initial letter: *dieser Mann ist gelehrt*, this man is learned; *Ihr Bruder hat ein großes Vermögen*, your brother has a large fortune; *die französische Staatsumwälzung*, the French revolution; *die englische Sprache*, the English language; *die londoner (or londoner) Kaufleute sind sehr reich*, the merchants of London are very rich. But when an adjective of the German language is employed like a substantive, it commences with a capital letter, all German substantives being written with a capital letter: *der Arme wird vernachlässigt*, the poor man is neglected; *es ist eine große Sünde, wenn man die Armen drückt*, it is a great sin to oppress the poor.

V. Almost every German adjective may be employed like a substantive masculine or neuter, as the following instances will shew: *der Reiche ist nicht glücklich, wenn er nicht die Tugend liebt*, the rich man is not happy, if he does not love virtue; *die meisten Reichen sehen mit Verachtung auf die Armen herab*, the greatest part of the rich look down with disdain upon the poor; *dieser Mann hat keinen Sinn für das Wahre*, this man has no sense for truth; *alles Gute ist der Gegenstand meiner Wünsche*, all good things are the object of my wishes. Take notice, that adjectives employed like substantives are declined according to the third declension.

Exercises on adjectives constructed in German without article.

I am very happy, said Gustavus, because I have wise and virtuous parents. Poor people have often nothing to eat, when they are hungry. Obedient children have the love and confidence of good men. Quarrelsome boys are not loved. Edward was in the company of some boys in a meadow. The grass was very high. Amongst the grass were some fine flowers. When we are sick, we learn to know the value of health; for healthy limbs are requisite for all that we undertake. Good qualities do honour to man. I have always great pleasure, when I give to poor people a trifle. It is a small expence to me to assist them. But this little is a great relief to them.

I am, ich bin.

very, sehr.

happy, glücklich.

said Gustavus, sagte Gustav.

because, weil.

I, ich.

wise, weise.

virtuous, tugendhaft.

the parents, die Aeltern, 3.

have, habe.

poor, arm.

people, die Leute, 2.

have, haben.

often, oft.

nothing, nichts.

to eat, zu essen.

when, wann.

they, sie.

hungry, hungrig.

are, sind.

obedient, gehorsam.

the love, die Liebe, 4.

the confidence, das Vertrauen, 1. ●

quarrelsome, zänfisch.

the boy, der Knabe, 3.

are not loved, werden nicht geliebt.

Edward, Eduard

was, war.

the company, die Gesellschaft, 4.

some, einige.

the meadow, die Wiese, 4.

the grass, das Gras, 5.

high, hoch.

amongst, unter, (dat.).

were, waren, standen.

some is not expressed in
German.

fine, schön.

the flower, die Blume, 4.

we, wir.

sick, krank.

are, sind.

we learn, lernen wir.

the value, der Werth, 2.

health, die Gesundheit, 4.

to know, kennen.

for, denn.

healthy, gesund.

the limb, das Glied, 5.

are, sind

for all that, zu Allem, was.

we undertake, wir vornehm-
men.

requisite, erforderlich.

the quality, die Eigenschaft,
4.

do, bringen.

man, der Mensch, 3.

the honour, die Ehre, 4.

always, immer.

the pleasure, die Freude, 4.

I, ich.

the trifle, die Kleinigkeit, 4.

give, gebe.

small, klein.

the expence, die Ausgabe, 4.

to me, für mich.

to assist them, wenn ich ih-
nen helfe.

but this little, allein dieses
Wenige.

the relief, die Erleichterung,
4.

to them, für sie.

Exercises on adjectives declined with the de- finite article der, die, das.

I.

Many misfortunes of life proceed from the false notions men have concerning whatever happens. The good qualities of the excellent Henry the fourth could not protect him from the stabs of the knife of the infamous Ravallac. That impious wretch deprived the French of this good king, who was one of the best princes who have

reigned in France. Alexander the great, king of Macedonia, has acquired the admiration of the world; but the generous Henry found means to gain the affections of his faithful subjects.

Many, viele.	infamous, nichtswürdig.
the misfortune, die Wider- wärtigkeit, 4.	protect, schützen.
the life, das Leben, 1.	that, dieser.
proceed, rühren her. Her must be placed after no- tions.	impious, gottlos.
from, von, (dat.).	the wretch, der Bösewicht, 5.
false, falsch.	deprived, beraubte.
the notion, die Vorstellung, 4.	the French, die Franzosen.
men have, welche die Men- schen haben. Haben must be put after happens.	of this, dieses.
concerning whatever hap- pens, von Allem, was sich ereignet.	the king, der König, 2.
excellent, vortrefflich.	who, welcher.
Henry the fourth, Heinrich der Vierte.	one, einer.
could, konnten.	the best, der beste.
him, ihn.	the prince, der Fürst, 3.
not, nicht.	was, war.
from, gegen, (accus.).	who, die.
the stab of the knife, der Messerstich, 2.	France, Frankreich.
	have reigned, regiert haben.
	has, hat sich.
	the admiration, die Bewun- derung, 4.
	the world, die Welt, 4.
	acquired, erworben.
	but, aber.
	generous, edelmüthig.
	found means, fand das Mit- tel.
	the affections, das Herz, 3.

of his, seiner.
faithful, treu.

the subject, der Unterthan,
3.
to gain, zu gewinnen.

II.

Modesty is one of the most becoming virtues that adorn the human heart. There is something in it, which prepossesses us strongly in favour of him that wears it, and generous minds long to assist the worthy man that seems diffident of his merit, and cannot prevail on himself to challenge the praise or tribute he deserves.

Modesty, die Bescheidenheit,

4.
one, eine.

the most becoming virtue,
die anständigste Tugend,

4.
that, welche.

the heart, das Herz, 3.

adorn, zieren.

there is something in it, es
ist in derselben etwas.

which, welches.

us, uns.

in favour of him that wears
it, für den, der es besitzt.

strongly, stark.

prepossesses, einnimmt.

the mind, die Seele, 4.

long, tragen ein Verlangen.
worthy, würdig.

the man, der Mann, 5.

to assist, zu helfen; (dat.).

that seems diffident of his
merit, der ein Mißtrauen
in seine Verdienste zu
setzen scheint.

and cannot prevail on him-
self, und es nicht über sich
vermag.

the praise, das Lob, 2.

the tribute, der Tribut, 2.

to challenge, zu fordern.

he deserves, welchen er ver-
dient.

III.

Amongst the arts, the invention of which belongs to the German nation, two of the most remarkable are the arts

of printing and engraving. In a visit Queen Elizabeth made to the famous Lord Chancellor Bacon at a small country seat, which he had built for himself before his preferment, she asked him how it came that he made himself so small a house. *It is not I, Madam, answered he, who have made my house too small for myself, but your Majesty who have made me too big for my house.* So numerous and so excellent are the books which have been written for the use of children and young persons, within a very few years, that on the great duties of life nothing can perhaps be added, which is either new, or which can be addressed to them in any new forms. Let us become as little children, without disguise, without pride, and without malice.

Amongst, unter, (dat.).

the art, die Kunst, 4.

the invention of which, deren Erfindung.

the nation, die Nation, 4.

belongs, angehört.

are, sind.

two, zwei.

the most remarkable, der, die, das merkwürdigste.

the art of printing, die Buchdruckerkunst.

the art of engraving, die Kupferstecherkunst.

in, bei, (dat.).

the visit, der Besuch, 2. in the plural die Besuche.

Queen Elizabeth, welchen die Königin Elisabeth.

famous, berühmt.

at, in, (dat.).

small, klein.

the country seat, das Landhaus, 5.

made, abstattete.

which, welches.

he, er.

before, vor, (dat.).

his, seiner.

the preferment, die Erhebung, 4.

for himself, für sich.

had built, gebaut hatte.

she asked him, fragte sie ihn.

how it came, wie es käme.

that he, daß er.

himself, sich.

so small a house, ein solches

Häuschen, 1. To form

a diminutive, -chen is

joined to a substantive,

and the vowels a, o, u,

if they are in the word, ä,

ö, ü; as: das Thier, das

Thierchen; das Haus,

das Häuschen; der Vo-

gel, das Vögelchen; die

Blume, das Blümchen.

Except das Buch, das

Büchlein; der Knochen,

das Knöchelchen, etc.

made, baute.

it is not I, who have, nicht ich habe.

answered he, antwortete er.

my, mein.

for myself, für mich.

too, zu.

made, gebaut.

but your Majesty, sondern

Eure Majestät.

who, welche.

me, mich.

too big, zu groß.

for, für, (acc.).

have made, gemacht haben.

so numerous, so zahlreich.

the book, das Buch, 5.

which, welche.

for the, zum, (instead of zu dem).

the use, der Gebrauch, 2.

within, in einem Zeitraume von, (dat.).

a very few years, sehr wenige Jahre.

have been written, geschrieben worden sind.

that, daß.

on, über, (acc.).

the duty, die Pflicht, 4.

perhaps, vielleicht.

nothing, nichts.

added, hinzugefügt.

can be, werden kann.

which, welches.

either, entweder.

new, neu.

is, ist.

or, oder.

to them, ihnen.

any, irgend ein.

the form, die Gestalt, 4.

can be addressed, vorgetragen werden kann.

let us become, laßt uns werden.	without, ohne, (acc.).
as, wie.	the disguise, die Verstellung,
little child, das kleine Kind,	4.
5.	the pride, der Stolz, 2.
	the malice, die Bosheit, 4.

IV.

Washington is the capital of the United states of America. Syria is agreeably refreshed during the hot months of June, July and August by cooling breezes from the Mediterranean. This charming country produces spontaneously a superabundance of all that is necessary for the profit or delight of man; for the indolent Turks are too lazy to cultivate it. The wise man, enlightened by the heavenly instruction of the Christian religion, does not ascribe his success or misfortunes to wrong causes. When we do not know something, we must listen to the well-meaning advice of sensible people, and follow it. Benevolence and compassion bring down a blessing on those who exercise such shining virtues. Their merit will not only meet its reward in the next life, but often receives due retribution also in this.

The capital, die Hauptstadt,	Syria, Syrien.
4.	is, wird.
united, vereinigt. The partici-	agreeably, auf eine angenehme Art.
ples are used as adjectives,	during, während, (genit.).
and declined as such.	hot, heiß.
states, die Staaten, plur. of	the months of June, July
singular, der Staat, 2.	and August, der Monat,
of, von.	(plur. die Monate, 2.)

- Junius, Julius und August.
 by, durch, (acc.).
 cooling, kühlend.
 the breeze, das Lüftchen 1.
 from, von, (dat.).
 the mediterranean, das mitteländische Meer, 2.
 refreshed, erfrischt.
 this, dieses,
 charming, bezaubernd, reizend.
 the country, das Land, 5.
 produces, bringt hervor.
 Hervor is placed after the words of all.
 spontaneously, von selbst.
 the superabundance, der Ueberfluß, 2.
 of all, an Allem.
 that, welches.
 for, zu, (dat.).
 the profit, der Nutzen, 1.
 the delight, das Vergnügen, 1.
 is necessary, nothwendig ist.
 for, denn.
 indolent, gefühllos.
 the Turk, der Türke, 3.
 too, zu.
 lazy, träge.
 it, es.
 to cultivate, anzubauen.
 the wise man, der Weise, 3.
 enlightened, erleuchtet.
 heavenly, himmlisch.
 the instruction, der Unterricht, 2.
 Christian, christlich.
 does not ascribe, schreibt nicht zu. Zu is placed after causes.
 his success, sein Glück.
 or misfortunes, oder Unglück.
 wrong, unrecht, falsch.
 the cause, die Ursache, 4.
 we, wir.
 something, etwas.
 do not know, nicht wissen.
 we must, so müssen wir.
 to, auf, (acc.).
 well-meaning, wohlmeinend.
 the advice, der Rath, 2.
 sensible, verständig.
 listen, hören.
 and follow it, und ihn befolgen.
 benevolence, das Wohlwollen, 1.
 compassion, das Mitleiden, 1.
 bring, bringen.
 on those, auf diejenigen.

the blessing, der Segen, 1.	its ihre.
down, herab.	the reward, die Belohnung,
who, welche.	4.
such, solche.	next, zukünftig.
shining, glänzend.	meet, finden.
the virtue, die Tugend, 4.	but, sondern.
exercise, ausüben.	often receive, sie empfangen
their merit, ihre Verdienste,	oft.
plural of the singular das	due, gebührend.
Verdienst, 2.	retribution, die Vergeltung,
will not only, werden nicht	4.
nur.	also in this, auch in diesem.

Exercises on adjectives declined with the indefinite article ein, eine, ein.

I.

A faithful friend does not forsake his friend in need. This girl has a beautiful nose, a little mouth and blue eyes. A generous heart writes on sand the benefits which others have received from it, and it engraves on marble those which it has received from others. This is a happy pair of lovers. Your brother made me a present of a fine pair of pistols. Give me a new pair of stockings and gloves.

Faithful, treu.	need, die Noth, 4.
the friend, der Freund, 2.	this girl, dieses Mädchen,
does not forsake, verläßt	1.
nicht.	beautiful, schön.
his, seinen.	the nose, die Nase, 4.

little, klein.
 the mouth, der Mund, 2.
 blue, blau.
 the eye, das Auge, 3.
 generous, edelmüthig.
 heart, das Herz, 3.
 writes, schreibt.
 on, auf, (acc.).
 the sand, der Sand, 2.
 the benefit, die Wohlthat,
 4.
 which, welche.
 others, Andere.
 from it, von ihm.
 have received, empfangen
 haben.
 it engraves, es gräbt.
 the marble, der Marmor, 1.
 those which it, diejenigen,
 welche es.

from others, von Andern.
 has received, empfangen
 hat.
 this is, dieses ist.
 happy, glücklich.
 a pair (2.) of lovers, ein
 Paar Liebende.
 your, Ihr.
 made me a present, beschenkt
 te mich.
 of, mit, (dat.).
 fine, schön.
 the pistol, die Pistole, 4.
 give me, geben Sie mir.
 new, neu.
 a pair of stockings, ein Paar
 Strümpfe.
 the glove, der Handschuh,
 2.

II.

The parents of a good and obedient child are very happy.
 Charlotte gave a little piece of gold to a poor woman who
 had a little sick child in her arms. Charles gave a useful
 book to a poor boy who had offended him. I have re-
 ceived a very fine letter from a learned woman who has
 given signal proofs of her learning

The parents, die Aeltern, 3.	the piece of gold, das Gold-
obedient, gehorsam.	stück, 2.
Charlotte, Pottchen.	the woman, die Frau, 4.
gave, gab.	who, welche.

sick, krank.	had offended, beleidigt hatte.
in her, auf ihrem.	learned, gelehrt.
the arm, der Arm, 2.	who, welche.
had, hatte.	signal, ausgezeichnet.
Charles, Karl.	the proof, der Beweis, 2.
useful, nützlich.	of her, ihrer.
the boy, der Knabe, 3.	the learning, die Gelehrsam-
who, welcher.	keit, 4.
him, ihn.	has given, gegeben hat.

CHAPTER XIII.

OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

The degrees of comparison in adjectives (*die Stufen* or *die Grade der Vergleichung* or *der Steigerung*) are certain modifications or variations in the extent of their signification, to which they are subject.

There are three degrees of comparison. These are: the *positive* (*der Positiv* or *die bestimmte Stufe*), the *comparative* (*der Comparativ* or *die Vergleichungsstufe*), and the *superlative* (*der Superlativ* or *die höchste Stufe*).

An adjective is in the *positive degree*, when we merely attribute to a substantive the quality implied by the adjective associated therewith, not making any comparison relative to the quality implied by the adjective. Thus, when we say: *Heinrich ist reich*, Henry is rich; *Ihr Vater ist ein weiser Mann*, your father is a wise man, the adjectives *reich* and *weiser* are the positive degree. This example shews, that the positive degree always represents the ad-

jective, such as it is, in its primitive state, whether it be absolute or constructed.

An adjective is in the *comparative degree*, when it expresses the result of a comparison between two or more substantives, relative to the quality implied by this adjective. Thus, when we say: *Heinrich der Vierte war großmüthiger als Philipp der Zweite*, Henry the fourth was more generous than Philip the second, *großmüthiger* is the comparative degree.

The comparative is formed in German by adding to the positive the syllable *er*, or the simple letter *r*, when the adjective ends in *e*, and by changing the vowels *a*, *o*, *u* into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, when they occur in the last syllable, as: positive, *heilig*, holy, *vortrefflich*, excellent, *schön*, fine, *weise*, wise, *stark*, strong, *roth*, red, *gesund*, healthy; comparative, *heiliger*, holier, *vortrefflicher*, more excellent, *schöner*, finer, *weiser*, wiser, *stärker*, stronger, *röther*, redder, *gesünder*, healthier.

But when the vowels *a*, *o*, *u* are not in the last or in the radical syllable of the word, they are not changed into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*; as: *herzhaft*, courageous, *herzhafter*, more courageous. The following adjectives are also to be excepted: *bunt*, party-coloured; *ehrlos*, infamous; *gerade*, straight; *gottlos*, impious; *hohl*, hollow; *lahm*, lame; *rund*, round; *sanft*, soft; *schlank*, slender; *stumm*, dumb; *toll*, mad; *zähm*, tame.

An adjective is in the *superlative degree*, firstly, when it announces, that the substantive accompanying it, possesses the quality it describes in an eminent degree; and secondly, when it attributes a superior degree of the quality it describes to its substantive, than to any other individual of its species. Thus, in this phrase: *Voltaire war sehr reich*, Voltaire was very rich, *sehr reich* is a superlative of

the first sort, which we may call a *superlative positive*; and in the following: Nero war der ruchloſeſte unter allen römischen Kaiſern, Nero was the most wicked of all the Roman emperors, der ruchloſeſte is a superlative of the second kind. It may be called a *superlative comparative*.

In order to express the *superlative positive*, the Germans make use of the following adverbs: ſehr, recht, gar, very; ungemein, überaus, exceedingly; außerordentlich, extraordinary; äufferſt, extremely; höchſt, most; unvergleichlich, incomparably; as: dieſes Porzellan iſt ſehr, recht, gar ſchön, this china is very fine; die Königin iſt überaus gnädig, unvergleichlich ſchön, und außerordentlich gelehrt, the Queen is exceedingly gracious, incomparably beautiful, and extraordinary learned; Frankreich iſt ein höchſt volkreiches Land, France is a most populous country. In order to announce, that the substantive accompanying an adjective, possesses the quality it describes in an inferior degree, than any other individual of its species, the Germans employ the adverb weniger or minder, less; as: er iſt minder or weniger, or nicht ſo gelehrt als ich, he is less learned than I.

The superlative comparative is formed by adding to the positive the syllable eſte or ſte, and by changing the vowels a, o, u into ä, ö, ü; as: positive, leicht, easy; ſchön, fine; arm, poor; groß, great; geſund, healthy; klug, prudent, wise; superlative, leichteſte, easiest; ſchönſte, finest; ärmſte, poorest; größteſte or größte, greatest; geſundſte, healthiest; klügſte or better klügſte, wisest.

The vowels a, o, u are not changed into ä, ö, ü, when they are not in the last or in the radical syllable of the word; as: herzhafte, courageous; der herzhafteſte, the most courageous.

The adjectives bunt, ehrloſ, gerade, gottloſ, hohl, lahm,

rund, sanft, schlank, stumm, toll and zahm retain also their vowels unchanged in the superlative.

The comparative and superlative are declined as the simple adjectives. When they are accompanied with the definite article *der, die, das*, they take the vowel *e* in the nominative singular in all the three genders, as also in the accusative of the feminine and neuter ; the other cases of singular, and all those of the plural take the termination *en*; as :

Comparative.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. sing.	der schönere,	die schönere,	das schönere,
G.	des schöneren,	der schöneren,	des schöneren.
D.	dem schöneren,	der schöneren,	dem schöneren.
A.	den schöneren,	die schönere,	das schönere.
N. plur.	die schöneren, in all the three genders.		
G.	der schöneren, in all the three genders.		
D.	den schöneren, in all the three genders.		
A.	die schöneren, in all the three genders.		

Superlative.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. sing.	der schönste,	die schönste,	das schönste.
G.	des schönsten,	der schönsten,	des schönsten.
D.	dem schönsten,	der schönsten,	dem schönsten.
A.	den schönsten,	die schönste,	das schönste.
N. plur.	die schönsten, in all the three genders.		
G.	der schönsten, in all the three genders.		
D.	den schönsten, in all the three genders.		
A.	die schönsten, in all the three genders.		

The declension of the comparative, accompanied with the indefinite article *ein, eine* *ein*, takes the termination *er*.

for the masculine, *e* for the feminine, and *es* for the neuter ; as :

Masculine.	Feminine.
N. ein klügerer Mann,	eine klügere Frau,
G. eines klügeren Mannes,	einer klügeren Frau,
D. einem klügeren Manne,	einer klügeren Frau,
A. einen klügeren Mann,	eine klügere Frau.

Neuter.

N. ein klügeres Kind,
G. eines klügeren Kindes,
D. einem klügeren Kinde,
A. ein klügeres Kind.

Observations.

I. When the positive ends in *el*, *en* and *er*, the first letter of these syllables, namely the *e* is usually omitted in the comparative ; as : *eitel*, *eitler* (instead of *eiteler*) ; *trocken*, *trockner* (instead of *trockener*) ; *sauer*, *saurer* (instead of *sauerer*). In the same manner they say in the superlative *größeste* and *größte*, *klügste* (instead of *klügeste*), etc.

II. It is to be observed; that *ch* is changed into *h* in the comparative of the word *hoch*, high. It must therefore be said *höher*, higher, and not *höcher*. But the superlative is regular : *der höchste*, the highest. Also the word *nah*, near, is irregular, its *h* being changed into *ch* in the superlative : *der nächste*, the nearest. But the comparative is regularly formed : *näher*, nearer.

III. *Gut*, good, has in the comparative *besser*, better, and in the superlative *der beste*, the best.

IV. The superlative of the German language always is constructed with the definite article *der, die, das*, if we except the compound word *allerliebſt*, very handsome. It follows thence, that the German have no superlative positive, but only a superlative comparative. In order to express the superlative positive, they make use, as we have seen, of some adverb.

V. The English *than* which is placed after a comparative, is expressed in German by *als*; as: he is much taller *than* your brother, *er iſt viel größer als Ihr Bruder*. In the same manner the English *as* which is found in a comparison, is rendered in German: he is as tall *as* you, *er iſt ſo groß als Sie*.

Exercises on the degrees of comparison.

I.

The ostrich is the largest bird. The nightingale has the most melodious voice. Europe is the least, but at the same time the most enlightened part of the world. Asia contains prodigious deserts as well as Africa, where the warmest regions in the world are to be found. America is much richer than the other parts of the world. Albertina is the best girl in the world. She is handsomer than her sister. Rosetta is at present the most amiable of all her sisters, who are however more amiable than many other young persons,

The ostrich, <i>der Strauß</i> ,	the nightingale, <i>die Nachti-</i>
2.	<i>gall</i> , 4.
large, <i>groß</i> .	melodious, <i>wohlklingend</i> , an-
the bird. <i>der Vogel</i> , 1.	<i>genehm</i> .

the voice, die Stimme, 4.

Europe, Europa,

little, klein.

but at the same time, aber
zu gleicher Zeit.

enlightened, aufgeklärt.

the part of the world, der
Welttheil, better der Erd-
theil, 2.

contains, enthält.

prodigious, ungeheuer.

the desert, die Wüste, 4.

as well as, eben so wie.

where, wo man.

warm, warm.

the region, die Gegend, 4.

the world, die Welt, 4.

are to be found, findet.

much, viel, weit:

rich, reich.

other, andern.

the girl, das Mädchen, 1.
she, sie.

handsome, hübsch.

her sister, ihre Schwester.

Rosetta, Röschen.

at present, jetzt.

amiable, liebenswürdig.

of all her, von allen ihren.

who, welche.

however, doch.

many other, viele andere.

young, jung.

the person, die Person, 4.

are, sind.

II.

My sister is cunninger than they think. If you had more sense than you have, you would speak in a more rational manner. Of all the characters in life a notorious liar is the most contemptible. His words are always treated with the utmost contempt, nor can the most solemn asseverations procure credit to what he delivers.

Cunning, listig.

they think, man denkt.

if, wenn.

you, Sie.

more, mehr.

the sense, der Verstand, 2.

had, hätten.

have, haben.

you would, so würden Sie.

in, auf; (acc.).

rational, vernünftig.	utmost, äußerste.
the manner, die Art, 4.	the contempt, die Verachtung, 4.
speak, reden.	treated, behandelst.
of all the characters in life, unter allen menschlichen Charakteren.	nor can the . . . procure credit to what he delivers, auch können die . . . dem, was er vorbringt, keinen Glauben verschaffen.
is, ist.	solemn, feierlich.
notorious, offenbar.	the asseveration, die Versicherung.
the liar, der Lügner, 1.	
contemptible, verächtlich.	
his, seine.	
are, werden.	
always, immer.	

CHAPTER XIV.

OF PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are so called, because they stand instead of nouns, to avoid a repetition.

There are six kinds of pronouns; namely, *personal* (persönliche), *possessive* (besitzanzeigende or zueignende), *demonstrative* (anzeigende), *interrogative* (fragende), *relative* (beziehende), and *improper* pronouns (uneigentliche Fürwörter).

I.

Of personal pronouns.

Personal pronouns are those pronouns which are directly representative of things and persons, occupying their station

next the verb, or the other parts of speech. There are three kinds of personal pronouns, according to the different persons who speak. These persons are: 1) that who speaks, or the *first* person; 2) that to whom we speak, or the *second* person; 3) the subject which we are speaking or treating of, or the *third* person. The personal pronouns are declined in the following manner:

First person.

Singular	Plural.
N. ich, I.	N. wir, we.
G. meiner, of me.	G. unser, of us.
D. mir, to me, me.	D. uns, to us.
A. mich, me.	A. uns, us.

Second person.

Singular.	Plural.
N. du, thou.	N. ihr, you.
G. deiner, of thee,	G. euer, of you.
D. dir, to thee, thee.	D. euch, to you.
A. dich, thee.	A. euch, you.

Third person.

Singular.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. er, he.	sie, she.	es, it.
G. seiner, of him.	ihrer, of her.	seiner, of it.
D. ihm, to him, him; sich, to himself, or himself,	ihr, to her, her; sich, to herself, or herself.	ihm, to it; sich, to itself, or itself.
A. ihn, him; sich, himself.	sie, her; sich, herself.	es, it; sich, itself.

Plural for all three genders.

- N. sie, they.
 G. ihrer, of them.
 D. ihnen, to them ; sich, to themselves, or themselves.
 A. sie, them ; sich, themselves.

Observations.

I. The word *selbst*, self, is often joined to all those pronouns ; but the pronoun reciprocal is not repeated as in the English ; as :

<i>ich selbst</i> , I myself.	<i>es selbst</i> , itself.
<i>du selbst</i> , thou thyself.	<i>wir selbst</i> , we ourselves.
<i>er selbst</i> , he himself.	<i>ihr selbst</i> , you yourselves.
<i>sie selbst</i> , she herself.	<i>sie selbst</i> , they themselves.

II. In speaking to a single person in German, the personal pronouns are employed in the following manner :

1. The second person singular, *du*, thou, is employed in addressing the supreme Being, and between intimate friends. Thus husbands and wives address one another. Also parents employ *du* in speaking to their children, and brothers and sisters do the same. Further, *du* is employed by a superior towards an inferior. Lastly, it is employed in poetry and in the fervor of some passion.

2. The second person plural, *ihr*, you, is employed in speaking to a servant, to a peasant, etc.

3. The third person singular, *er*, he, *sie*, she, is employed in speaking to the servant of another gentleman, to a girl of low extraction, to inferior tradesmen, etc.

4. The third person plural *ſie*, *they*, is employed in speaking to a gentleman, lady, etc. This last mode of address is the most polite, and is now become the prevailing custom ; it is used at present to all persons without distinction. It is also to be observed, that the personal pronouns, when they are employed in addressing any person, commence with a capital letter. Only *du* is excepted, when it is employed in addressing the supreme Being.

Exercises on the personal pronouns.

I.

I am there, she is there, and he is not here. He told me, that he would come, and promised her to be here at two o'clock ; but he does not come. If he had not promised to come to see us, we should not have thought about him. Have you seen him to day ? Yes, Sir, I have seen him, but he has not seen me. If I had spoken with him, I should have said to him : tell me, why do you promise to come, and why do you not come ?

Am, bin
there, da.

here, hier.

told me, ſagte zu mir.

that, daß.

would come, kommen wüß-
de.

promised, verſprach.

at two o'clock, um zwei
Uhr.

to be here, hier zu ſeyn.

but he does not come, aber
er kommt nicht.

if, wenn.

had not promised, nicht ver-
ſprochen hätte.

to come to see, zu beſuchen.

Take notice, that the per-
sonal pronouns are pre-
fixed in German to the
infinitives and participles ;

as : er wünſcht mich zu

sehen, he wishes to see	had spoken, gesprochen
me; ich habe ihn immer	hätte.
geliebt, I have always	I should, so würde ich.
loved him.	to, zu, (dat.).
we should not, so würden	have said, gesagt haben.
wir nicht.	tell, sagen Sie.
about, an, (acc.).	me, dat.
have thought, gedacht ha-	why do you promise, was
ben.	rum versprechen Sie?
to day, heute.	to come, zu kommen.
seen, gesehen.	do you not come, kommen
Yes, Sir, ja, mein Herr.	Sie nicht.
with, mit, (dat.).	

II.

Tell her, that I love her, because she loves me; but don't tell her, that I am sick. How do your brothers do? Very indifferently; they have still both of them a fever. Give them my compliments. I thank you. But do you know them, pray? What a question! And do you know my sister likewise? Why should not I know her? She knows me, and I know her. If you had not known her, I should have made you acquainted with her.

Her, dat.	wie befinden sich Ihre
love, liebe.	Herrn Brüder?
because, weil.	very indifferently, so, so.
loves, liebt.	still, noch.
don't tell, sagen Sie nicht.	both of them, beide.
how do your brothers do?	the fever, das Fieber, 1.
	give, machen Sie.

my compliments, meine	should I, sollte ich.
Empfehlung.	not know, nicht kennen.
I thank you, ich danke Ih-	knows, kennt.
nen.	had not known, nicht ge-
do you know, kennen Sie.	kannt hätten.
pray, denn.	I should, so würde ich.
what a question! was für	you, Sie,
eine Frage!	with, mit, (dat.)
my, meine.	have made acquainted, be-
likewise, gleichfalls, auch.	kannt gemachyt haben.

11.

Of possessive pronouns.

Possessive pronouns are pronouns, which intimate, that the substantive they refer to, belongs to the person they represent.

There are two kinds of possessive pronouns, namely, possessive conjunctive pronouns, and possessive absolute pronouns. The possessive conjunctive pronouns are connected with substantives, and may be called possessive adjective pronouns, because they simply refer to a substantive without being qualified to represent it. The possessive absolute pronouns stand without substantives, and may be denominated possessive substantive pronouns, because they refer not only to a substantive, but even represent it, by being actually substituted in its place.

There are possessive conjunctive pronouns of the first, second, and third person. They are so called, because they appropriate something either to the first, or second, or third person singular or plural. For instance, *mein Buch*, my book, that is, the book which belongs to me.

The possessive conjunctive pronouns are declined in the singular as the indefinite article *ein, eine, ein*. They are always directly accompanied by their substantive, if they be not separated from it by some adjective, which is then declined, as if it was associated with the indefinite article in the plural. For instance, *mein guter Vater*, my good father; *meine guten Brüder*, my good brothers. Sometimes also the possessive conjunctive pronouns are named alone, when they represent an adjective absolute; as: *dieses Buch ist mein*, this book is mine.

The possessive absolute pronouns are declined with the definite article *der, die, das*, like the substantives of the third declension. They refer either to the first, or the second, or the third person.

Declension of the possessive pronouns.

1.

POSSESSIVE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

First person singular,

Masculine.

Feminine.

N. <i>mein Bruder</i> , my brother.	<i>meine Schwester</i> , my sister.
G. <i>meines Bruders</i> , of my brother.	<i>meiner Schwester</i> , of my sister.
D. <i>meinem Bruder</i> , to my brother.	<i>meiner Schwester</i> , to my sister.
A. <i>meinen Bruder</i> , my brother.	<i>meine Schwester</i> , my sister.

Neuter.

N. *mein Kind*, my child.

G. *meines Kindes*, of my child.

D. meinem Kinde, to my child.

A. mein Kind, my child.

Plural.

Masculine.

Feminine.

N. meine Brüder, my brothers. meine Schwestern, my sisters.

G. meiner Brüder, of my brothers. meiner Schwestern, of my sisters.

D. meinen Brüdern, to my brothers. meinen Schwestern, to my sisters.

A. meine Brüder, my brothers. meine Schwestern, my sisters.

Neuter.

N. meine Kinder, my children.

G. meiner Kinder, of my children.

D. meinen Kindern, to my children.

A. meine Kinder, my children.

Second person singular.

Singular.

Masculine.

Feminine.

N. dein Bruder, thy brother. deine Schwester, thy sister.

G. deines Bruders, of thy brother. deiner Schwester, of thy sister.

D. deinem Bruder, to thy brother. deiner Schwester, to thy sister.

A. deinen Bruder, thy brother. deine Schwester, thy sister.

Neuter.

N. dein Kind, thy child.

G. deines Kindes, of thy child.

D. deinem Kinde, to thy child.

A. dein Kind, thy child.

Plural.

Masculine.

Feminine.

N. deine Brüder, thy brothers. deine Schwestern, thy sisters.

G. deiner Brüder, of thy brothers. deiner Schwestern, of thy sisters.

D. deinen Brüdern, to thy brothers. deinen Schwestern, to thy sisters.

A. deine Brüder, thy brothers. deine Schwestern, thy sisters.

Neuter.

N. deine Kinder, thy children.

G. deiner Kinder, of thy children.

D. deinen Kindern, to thy children.

A. deine Kinder, thy children.

Third person singular masculine.

Singular.

Masculine.

Feminine.

N. sein Bruder, his brother. seine Schwester, his sister.

G. seines Bruders, of his brother. seiner Schwester, of his sister.

D. seinem Bruder, to his brother. seiner Schwester, to his sister.

A. seinen Bruder, his brother. seine Schwester, his sister.

Neuter.

N. sein Kind, his child.

G. seines Kindes, of his child.

D. seinem Kinde, to his child.

A. sein Kind, his child.

Plural.

Masculine.

Feminine.

- N. seine Brüder, his brothers. seine Schwestern, his sisters.
 G. seiner Brüder, of his brothers. seiner Schwestern, of his sisters.
 D. seinen Brüdern, to his brothers. seinen Schwestern, to his sisters.
 A. seinen Brüdern, his brothers. seine Schwestern, his sisters.

Neuter.

- N. seine Kinder, his children.
 G. seiner Kinder, of his children.
 D. seinen Kindern, to his children.
 A. seine Kinder, his children.

Third person singular feminine.

Singular.

Masculine.

Feminine.

- N. ihr Bruder, her brother. ihre Schwester, her sister.
 G. ihres Bruders, of her brother. ihrer Schwester, of her sister.
 D. ihrem Bruder, to her brother. ihrer Schwester, to her sister.
 A. ihren Bruder, her brother. ihre Schwester, her sister.

Neuter.

- N. ihr Kind, her child.
 G. ihres Kindes, of her child.
 D. ihrem Kinde, to her child.
 A. ihr Kind, her child.

Plural.

Masculine.

Feminine.

- N ihre Brüder, her brothers. ihre Schwestern, her sisters.
- G. ihrer Brüder, her brothers. ihrer Schwestern, of her sisters.
- D. ihren Brüdern, to her brothers. ihren Schwestern, to her sisters.
- A. ihre Brüder, her brothers. ihre Schwestern, her sisters.

Neuter.

- N. ihre Kinder, her children.
- G. ihrer Kinder, of her children.
- D. ihren Kindern, to her children.
- A. ihre Kinder, her children.

First person plural.

Singular.

Masculine.

Feminine.

- N. unser Bruder, our brother. unsere Schwester, our sister.
- G. unseres Bruders, of our brother. unserer Schwester, of our sister.
- D. unserm Bruder, to our brother. unserer Schwester, to our sister.
- A. unsern Bruder, our brother. unsere Schwester, our sister.

Neuter.

- N. unser Kind, our child.
- G. unseres Kindes, of our child.
- D. unserm Kinde, to our child.
- A. unser Kind, our child.

Plural.

Masculine.

Feminine.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| N. unsere Brüder, our brothers. | unsere Schwestern, our sisters. |
| G. unserer Brüder, of our brothers. | unserer Schwestern, of our sisters. |
| D. unsern Brüdern, to our brothers. | unsern Schwestern, to our sisters. |
| A. unsere Brüder, our brothers. | unsere Schwestern, our sisters. |

Neuter.

- N. unsere Kinder, our children.
 G. unserer Kinder, of our children.
 D. unsern Kindern, to our children.
 A. unsere Kinder, our children.

Second person plural.

Singular.

Masculine.

Feminine.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| N. euer Bruder, your brother. | eure Schwester, your sister. |
| G. eures Bruders, of your brother. | eurer Schwester, of your sister. |
| D. eurem Bruder, to your brother. | eurer Schwester, to your sister. |
| A. euren Bruder, your brother. | eure Schwester, your sister. |

Neuter.

- N. euer Kind, your child
 G. eures Kindes, of your child.
 D. eurem Kinde, to your child.
 A. euer Kind, your child.

Plural.

Masculine.

Feminine.

- N. eure Brüder, your brothers. eure Schwestern, your sisters.
 G. eurer Brüder, of your brothers. eurer Schwestern, of your sisters.
 D. euren Brüdern, to your brothers. euren Schwestern, to your sisters.
 A. eure Brüder, your brothers. eure Schwestern, your sisters.

Neuter.

- N. eure Kinder, your children.
 G. eurer Kinder, of your children.
 D. euren Kindern, to your children.
 A. eure Kinder, your children.

Third person plural.

Singular.

Masculine.

Feminine.

- N. ihr Bruder, their brother. ihre Schwester, their sister.
 G. ihres Bruders, of their brother. ihrer Schwester, of their sister.
 D. ihrem Bruder, to their brother. ihrer Schwester, to their sister.
 A. ihr Bruder, their brother. ihre Schwester, their sister.

Neuter.

- N. ihr Kind, their child.
 G. ihres Kindes, of their child.
 D. ihrem Kinde, to their child.
 A. ihr Kind, their child.

Plural.

Masculine

Feminine.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| N. ihre Brüder, their brothers. | ihre Schwestern, their sisters. |
| G. ihrer Brüder, of their brothers. | ihren Schwestern, of their sisters. |
| D. ihren Brüdern, to their brothers. | ihren Schwestern, to their sisters. |
| A. ihre Brüder, their brothers. | ihre Schwestern, their sisters. |

Neuter.

- N. ihre Kinder, their children
 G. ihrer Kinder, of their children.
 D. ihren Kindern, to their children:
 A. ihre Kinder, their children.

II.

POSSESSIVE ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

First person singular.

Singular.

Masculine.

Feminine.

Neuter.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| N. der meinige,
mine. | die meinige,
mine. | das meinige,
mine. |
| G. des meinigen,
of mine. | der meinigen,
of mine. | des meinigen,
of mine. |
| D. dem meinigen,
to mine. | der meinigen,
to mine. | dem meinigen,
to mine. |
| A. den meinigen,
mine. | die meinige,
mine. | das meinige,
mine. |

Plural through all three genders.

- N. die meinigen, mine. D. den meinigen, to mine;
 G. der meinigen, of mine. A. die meinigen, mine.

Second person singular.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. der deinige, thine.	die deinige, thine.	das deinige, thine.
G. des deinigen, of thine,	der deinigen, of thine.	des deinigen, of thine.
D. dem deinigen, to thine.	der deinigen, to thine.	dem deinigen, to thine.
A. den deinigen, thine.	die deinige, thine.	das deinige, thine.

Plural through all three genders.

- N. die deinigen, thine. D. den deinigen, to thine.
 G. der deinigen, of thine. A. die deinigen, thine,

Third person singular masculine.

Singular

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. der seinige, his.	die seinige, his.	das seinige, his.
G. des seinigen, of his.	der seinigen, of his	des seinigen, of his.

D. dem seinigen, to his.	der seinigen, to his.	dem seinigen. to his.
A. den seinigen, his.	die seinige, his.	daß seinige. his.

Plural through all three genders.

N. die seinigen, his.	D. den seinigen, to his.
G. der seinigen, of his.	A. die seinigen, his.

Third person singular feminine.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. der ihrige, hers.	die ihrige, hers.	daß ihrige, hers.
G. des ihrigen, of hers.	der ihrigen, of hers.	des ihrigen, of hers.
D. dem ihrigen, to hers.	der ihrigen, to hers.	dem ihrigen, to hers.
A. den ihrigen, hers.	die ihrige, hers.	daß ihrige. hers.

Plural through all three genders.

N. die ihrigen, hers.	D. den ihrigen, to hers.
G. der ihrigen, of hers.	A. die ihrigen, hers.

First person plural.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. der unserige, ours.	die unserige, ours.	daß unserige, ours.

G.	deß unserigen, of ours	der unserigen, of ours.	deß unserigen, of ours.
D.	dem unserigen, to ours.	der unserigen, to ours.	dem unserigen, to ours.
A.	den unserigen, ours.	die unserige, ours.	daß unserige, ours.

Plural through all three genders.

N.	die unserigen, ours.	D.	den unserigen, to ours.
G.	der unserigen, of ours.	A.	die unserigen, ours.

Second person plural.

	Singular.		
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N.	der eurige, yours.	die eurige, yours.	daß eurige, yours.
G.	deß eurigen, of yours.	der eurigen, of yours.	deß eurigen, of yours.
D.	dem eurigen, to yours.	der eurigen, to yours.	dem eurigen, to yours.
A.	den eurigen, yours.	die eurige, yours.	daß eurige, yours.

Plural through all three genders.

N.	die eurigen, yours.	D.	den eurigen, to yours.
G.	der eurigen, of yours.	A.	die eurigen, yours.

Third person plural.

	Singular.		
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N.	der ihrige, theirs.	die ihrige, theirs.	daß ihrige, theirs.

G. des ihrigen, of theirs.	der ihrigen, of theirs.	des ihrigen, of theirs.
D. dem ihrigen, to theirs.	der ihrigen, to theirs.	dem ihrigen, to theirs.
A. den ihrigen, theirs.	die ihrige, theirs.	das ihrige, theirs.

Plural through all three genders.

N. die ihrigen, theirs.	D. den ihrigen, to theirs.
G. der ihrigen, of theirs.	A. die ihrigen, theirs.

Observations.

I. In speaking to a single person in German the possessive pronouns are employed as the personal pronouns. *Dein* and *deinige* are used as *du*; *sein* and *seinige* as *er*; *ihr* and *ihrige* as *sie*.

II. *Der meinige, der deinige, der seinige, der unserige, der eurige, der ihrige* may be called possessive relative pronouns, because they allways refer to a substantive which has been named before.

III. The possessive absolute pronouns are also used as substantives: *das Meinige*, my property; *das Deinige*, thy property; *das Seinige*, his property; *das Ihrige*, her property; your property, their property; *sie fordert das Ihrige*, she demands what is hers; *das Unsrige*, our property, etc.; *die Meinigen*, or *die meinen*, my family, etc.

Exercises on the possessive conjunctive pronouns.

I.

My brother and my sister are at home ; but my cousin and my niece are gone together in the garden. Pray, where are your father and my mother ? They are gone to the French church. Your mother and my father are very well satisfied with their sons. Has Louisa shewn her new grammar to her father ? Yes, my friend, yesterday evening. And what did her father say ? He did not say any thing ; for the daughters of our neighbour were there. When your children are there with our cousins, my uncle never finds an opportunity for speaking.

At home, zu Hause.

the cousin, der Better, 1. pl.

die Bettern.

the niece, die Nichte, 4.

are, sind.

together, mit einander.

the garden, der Garten, 1.

gone, gegangen.

pray, where are, wo sind

denn.

to, in, (acc.).

French, französisch.

the church, die Kirche, 4.

the son, der Sohn, 2.

very well satisfied, sehr wohl

zufrieden.

new, neu.

the grammar, die Sprach-
lehre, 4.

shewn, gezeigt.

yes, ja.

yesterday evening, gestern
Abend.

and what did say, und was
sagte.

not any thing, nichts.

the neighbour, der Nachbar,
sing. 1. plur. 3.: die
Nachbarn.

were there, waren da.

when, wann.

are there, da sind.

finds, so findet.

the uncle, der Onkel, 1. or the opportunity, die Gelegen-
 der Oheim, 2. genheit, 4.
 never, niemals or nie. for speaking, zu reden.

II.

The friends of my friends are also my friends. Your brother is my friend, because he is the friend of my parents. I am pleased with the friendly treatment of my son in law. Your father honours me with his friendship without knowing me. I wrote three times to my brother, but I received no answer. I see your grief written in your countenance. Her brother has wrote me, to employ every means in order to gain your friendship. Our common friend will be a means of our union. His friendship will straighten our bands.

The friend, der Freund, 2.	three times, dreimal.
also, auch.	to, an, (acc.).
because, weil.	but I receive no answer,
the parents, die Aeltern.	aber ich empfang keine
the treatment; die Behand-	Antwort.
lung, 4.	I see, ich sehe.
the son in law, der Schwie-	the grief, der Kummer, 1.
gersohn, Eidam, 2.	in, auf, (dat).
I am pleased with something.	the countenance, das Ge-
es gefällt mir etwas.	sicht, 5.
honours me, ehrt mich.	written, geschrieben.
the friendship, die Freunds-	has wrote me, hat mir ge-
schaft, 4.	schrieben.
without knowing me, ohne	to employ every means, daß
mich zu kennen.	ich jedes Mittel or Alles,
I wrote, ich schrieb.	anwenden sollte.

in order to gain, um zu ge- winnen.	the union, die Vereinigung, 4.
common, gemeinschaftlich.	be, seyn.
will, wird.	will, wird.
a means, ein Mittel.	the bands, das Band.
	straighten, enger knüpfen.

III.

My sister has deserved the affection of her parents, and the esteem of all her acquaintance. Her modesty ennobles all her virtues. Her learning does honour to her masters, and to her application. When they speak to her of her talents, she turns the conversation another way with much address. Your brother and their cousins speak every where with great regard of her accomplishments. Her writing pleases the eye, but her style makes one forget the fine strokes of her pen.

Has, hat.	does, gereichen.
the affection, die Liebe, 4.	the master, der Lehrer, 1.
the esteem, die Achtung, 4.	the application, der Fleiß, 2.
of all, aller.	honour, zur Ehre.
the acquaintance, die Be- kannten, plural of the word der Bekannte, 3.	when they, wann man.
deserved, verdient.	to, mit, (dat.).
the modesty, die Bescheiden- heit, 4.	the talent, das Talent, 2.
ennobles, adelt.	speak, spricht.
all, alle.	she turns, so lenkt sie.
the virtue, die Tugend, 4.	the conversation, das Ge- spräch, 2.
the learning, die Kenntnisse, plural of the word die Kenntniß, 4.	with much address, auf eine geschickte Art.
	another way, auf etwas An- deres.
	speak every where, sprechen überall.

with, mit, (dat.).	the eye, das Auge, sing. 2.
great, groß.	plur. 3.
the regard, die Achtung, 4.	but, aber.
the accomplishment, der	the style, die Schreibart, 4.
Vorzug, 2.	makes one, macht daß man.
the writing, die Schrift,	fine, schön.
Handschrift, 4.	the stroke, der Zug, 2.
pleases, gefällt, with the da-	the pen, die Feder, 4.
tive.	forgets, vergißt.

Exercises on the possessive absolute pronouns

I.

This horse is mine ; he is a great deal better than yours. Your sister dances better than mine. The sister of your neighbour sings better than yours and mine. Her father and yours spoke with mine of their children. They said : to educate our children, and to render them happy, is the great object of our life. My books are much dearer than yours ; but yours are a great deal better than mine. My gardens are all very large ; but they are not as well cultivated as yours. My youngest son, who speaks very well German, perfectly resembles my mother, but not his.

This horse, dieses Pferd, 2.	said, sagten.
a great deal better, weit bes-	to educate, zu erziehen.
ser.	happy, glücklich.
dances better, tanzt besser.	to render, zu machen.
the neighbour, der Nachbar,	the object, der Gegenstand,
sing. 1. plur. 3.	2.
sings, singt.	the life, das Leben, 1.
spoke, sprachen.	much, viel, weit.
of, von, (dat.).	

dear, theuer.	man, welcher sehr gut
large, groß.	deutsch spricht.
as well cultivated, so gut an- gebauet.	resembles, gleichet, with the dative.
young, jung.	perfectly, vollkommen.
who speaks very well Ger-	

II.

A cat, I think that it was ours, stole the roast chicken which the maid had laid upon the table. My brother has given to yours the letters which he has received from the brother of your wife. I read one of them yesterday, which began thus : My dear friend ! Our country has made peace with yours, and yet I don't receive any letters from you. Don't say, that they have been lost ; for at present your letters and mine are no longer intercepted by the enemy. If my children were his, and not mine, I should not care for them. For his are not much better than mine and yours. Every nation has a self-love of its own ; the Russians have theirs, just as well as the English.

The cat, die Katze, 4.	the table, der Tisch, 2.
I think that it was, ich glaube, es war.	had laid, gebracht hatte.
stole, stahl.	has, hat.
roast, gebraten.	the letter, der Brief, 2.
the chicken, das Hühnchen, 1.	given, gegeben.
which, welches.	the wife, die Frau, 4.
the maid, die Magd, 4.	I read, ich las.
upon, auf, (acc.),	yesterday, gestern.
	one, einen.
	which, welcher,

thus, so.

began, anfang.

dear, theurer, instead of theurer.

the country, das Land 2.

the peace, der Friede, 3.

made, gemacht.

and yet, und doch.

I do receive, bekomme ich.

not any, keine.

do say, sagen Sie.

not, nicht.

that they have been lost, daß
sie verloren gegangen sind.

for at present, denn jetzt.

are, werden.

no longer, nicht mehr.

by, von, (dat.)

the enemy, der Feind, 2.

intercepted, aufgefangen.

if, wenn.

were, wären.

I should not care for them,

so würde ich mich nicht um

sie bekümmern.

are, sind.

every, jedes.

the nation, das Volk, 5.

has a self-love of its own, hat

seine besondere Eigenliebe.

the Russian, der Russe, 3.

just as well as, eben so wohl

als.

the English, die Engländer.

III.

Of demonstrative pronouns.

Demonstrative pronouns are only used in the third person, and serve to fix the attention of those, to whom we speak, upon some individual of that species, which the substantive, to which they are joined, describes. These pronouns are declined thus :

	Singular.		
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N.	dieser, this.	diese, this.	dieses, this.
G.	dieses, of this.	dieser, of this.	dieses, of this.
D.	diesem, to this.	dieser, to this.	diesem, to this.
A.	diesen, this.	diese, this.	dieses, this.

Plural through all three genders.

- N. diese, these. D. diesen, to these.
G. dieser, of these. A. diese, these.

Singular.

- | | Masculine. | Feminine. | Neuter. |
|----|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| N. | jener, that. | jene, that. | jenes, that. |
| G. | jenes, of that. | jener, of that. | jenes, of that. |
| D. | jenem, to that. | jener, to that. | jenem, to that |
| A. | jenen, that. | jene, that. | jenes, that. |

● Plural through all three genders.

- N. jene, those. D. jenen, to those.
G. jener, of those. A. jene, those.

Singular.

- | | Masculine. | Feminine. |
|----|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| N. | derjenige or der, he, | diejenige or die, she, that. |
| G. | desjenigen or dessen, of | derjenigen or deren, of her, |
| | him, of that. | of that. |
| D. | demjenigen or dem, to | derjenigen or der, to her, to |
| | him, to that. | that. |
| A. | denjenigen or den, him, | diejenige or die, her, that. |
| | that. | |

Neuter.

- N. dasjenige or daß, it, that.
G. desjenigen or dessen, of it, of that.
D. demjenigen or dem, to it, to that.
A. dasjenige or daß, it, that.

Plural through all three genders.

- N. diejenigen or die, they, those.
G. derjenigen or derer, of them, of those.

D. denjenigen or denen, to them, to those.

A. diejenigen or die, they, those.

Singular.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. derselbe, he ; the same.	dieselbe, she ; the same.	dasselbe, it ; the same.
G. desselben, of him ; of the same.	derselben, of her ; of the same.	desselben, of it ; of the same.
D. demselben, to him ; to the same.	derselben, to her ; to the same.	demselben, to it ; to the same.
A. denselben, him ; the same.	dieselbe, her ; the same.	dasselbe, it ; the same.

Plural through all three genders.

N. dieselben, they ; the same.

G. derselben, of them ; of the same.

D. denselben, to them ; to the same.

A. dieselben, them ; the same.

Observation.

I. When *der* is the nominative of the demonstrative pronoun, it must be pronounced with an emphasis, by which it is distinguished from the article *der* ; as, *der Mensch ist weise, welcher* —, that man is wise who — ; *der Mensch ist weise, wenn er* —, man is wise, if he —.

II. In order to not confound *derer* and *denen* with the article *der* and *den*, take notice, that *derer* and *denen* always stand instead of a substantive and never before and with it. For instance, *das Schicksal unglücklicher Menschen ist bedauernswürdig ; aber das Schicksal derer, welche sich*

ihr Unglück selbst zugezogen haben, ist noch bedauernswerdiger, the fate of unfortunate men is deplorable ; but the fate of these is yet more deplorable, who are the cause of their own misfortune.

III. *He that, he who, she that, she who, they that, they who, those who*, are rendered in German by *derjenige, welcher ; diejenige, welche ; diejenigen, welche ; as, diejenigen, welche in der Stadt wohnen*, they that live in town.

IV. When the demonstrative pronouns are separated from their substantive by some adjective, this adjective is declined, as if it was along with the definite article *der, die, das*.

Exercises on demonstrative pronouns.

I.

This poor peasant is always content ; but this rich miser is scarcely ever so. Which of the two is the most happy ? This lady is the daughter of this old miser, of whom I have already spoken to you in this exercise. This young lady, on the contrary, throws her money out of the window. It is a pity. That fault is, I believe, the only one she has. Do you know those gentlemen ? What gentlemen are you speaking of, pray ? I am speaking of those who are dancing in this new house. Yes, I know some of them. This gentleman, who speaks to the young lady your sister, is my friend. It is he who has bought this fine garden, and the fine meadow, which pleased you so much. But I don't know this lady who is near this window.

Poor, arm.

the peasant, *der Bauer*, 1.

always, *immer*.

content, *zufrieden*.

rich, *reich*.

the miser, *der Geizhals*, 2.

is scarcely ever so, *ist es fast*

niemals.

which of the two, welcher von beiden.	the gentleman, der Herr, 3. gen. des Herren; plur. die Herren.
happy, glücklich.	of what, von welchen.
the lady, das Fräulein, 1.	are you speaking, sprechen Sie.
the daughter, die Tochter, 1.	pray, denn.
old, alt.	I am speaking ich spreche.
of whom, von dem.	new, neu.
I, ich.	the house, das Haus, 5.
to you, mit Ihnen.	are dancing, tanzen.
the exercise, die Aufgabe, 4.	yes, I know some, ja ich kenne einige.
already, schon.	who, welcher.
have spoken, gesprochen ha- be.	to, mit, (dat.).
young, jung.	speaks, spricht.
on the contrary, hingegen.	the meadow, die Wiese, 4.
throws, wirft.	has bought, gekauft hat.
the money, das Geld, 5.	who, die.
out of the window, zum Fen- ster (1.) hinaus.	you, Ihnen, (dat.).
it is a pity, das ist Schade.	so much, so sehr.
the fault, der Fehler, 1.	pleased, gefiel.
I believe, glaube ich.	I don't know, ich kenne nicht.
the only one, der einzige.	near, bei, (dat.).
she has, den sie hat.	
do you know, kennen Sie.	

II.

This is much better than that. Do not stir from this place. You must go this way. They were talking of this and that. Do you know these boys, these children, these women? Yes, I know them. He who betrays friendship ought to be banished from society. He often is but a fool

who thinks himself the wittiest of men. He knows not men who trusts in their promises. He has nothing to expect from others who only thinks of himself. He is an atheist who does not believe in God. They are lazy people who sleep, drink, and eat all day long, and will not work

Do not stir, rühren Sie sich	himself, sich.
nicht.	the wittiest, für den Klügsten.
from, von, (dat.).	thinks, hält.
the place, der Platz, 2.	knows, kennt.
you must, Sie müssen.	in, auf, (acc.).
the way, der Weg, 2.	the promise, die Versprech-
go, gehen.	ung, 4.
they were talking, sie sprach,	trusts, sich verläßt.
en.	has nothing to expect from
of, von, (dat.).	others, hat nichts von An-
the boy, der Knabe, 3.	dern zu erwarten.
the woman, das Frauengim-	only thinks of himself, bloß
mer, 1.	an sich denkt.
the friendship, die Freunds-	the atheist, der Gottesläug-
schaft, 4.	ner, 1.
betrays, verräth.	does not believe in God, nicht
ought, sollte.	an Gott glaubt.
from, aus, (dat.).	lazy, faul.
the society, die Gesellschaft,	people, Leute, plur. 2.
4.	sleep, drink, schlafen, trin-
to be banished, verbannt	fen.
werden.	and eat all day long, und den
often is, ist oft.	ganzen Tag essen.
but, nur.	and will not work, und nicht
the fool, der Narr, 3. gen.	arbeiten wollen.
des Narren.	

IV.

On interrogative pronouns.

Interrogative pronouns are those which are used for the purpose of asking questions. These pronouns are declined in the following manner.

Singular.

Masculine and Feminine.

Neuter.

N.	wer ? who ?	was ? what ?
G.	wessen ? whose ?	indeclinable.
D.	wem ? to whom ?	von was ? of what ?
A.	wen ? whom ?	was ? what ?

Singular.

Masculine.

Feminine.

N.	welcher ? who ? which ? what ?	welche ? who ? which ? what ?
G.	welches ? whose ? of which ? of what ?	welcher ? whose ? of which ? of what ?
D.	welchem ? to whom ? to which ? to what ?	welcher ? to whom ? to which ? to what ?
A.	welchen ? whom ? which ? what ?	welche ? whom ? which ? what ?

Neuter.

N.	welches ? who ? which ? what ?
G.	welches ? whose ? of which ? of what ?
D.	welchem ? to whom ? to which ? to what ?
A.	welches ? whom ? which ? what ?

Plural for all three genders.

N. welche ? who ? which ? D. welchen ? to whom ? to
 G. welcher ? whose ? of which ?
 which ? A. welche ? whom ? which ?

Plural.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. was für ein ? what ?	was für eine ? what ?	was für ein ? what ?
G. was für eines ? of what ?	was für einer ? of what ?	was für eines ? of what ?
D. was für einem ? to what ?	was für einer ? to what ?	was für einem ? to what ?
A. was für einen ? what ?	was für eine ? what ?	was für ein ? what ?

Plural for all three genders and all cases.

was für ?

Observations.

I. The following examples shall make the use of the interrogative pronoun was für ein ? plain : was für ein Mann ist dieses ? what man is this ? was für einem Kinde haben Sie es gegeben ? to which child have you given it ? versuchen Sie es, was Sie für einen Freund an mir haben, try what a friend I am ; was für Beweise haben Sie ? what proofs have you ? was für partielle Richter sind Liebe und Haß ! what partial judges are love and hatred !

II. The article ein is not added to the interrogative pro-

noun *was für* ? when it refers to a substantive that is only employed in the singular. For instance, *was ist das für Geld* ? what gold is that ?

III. When the interrogative pronoun *was für ein* ? is used in an absolute sense, it has in the nominative singular masculine *was für einer* ? and in the nominative and accusative singular neuter *was für eines* or *eins* ?

IV. The most of the interrogative pronouns are also used without interrogation, in order to denote admiration or surprise.

Exercises on interrogative pronouns.

I.

Who is always wise ? Whom does this book belong to ? To me. Who gave you it ? I bought it the day before yesterday. Of what bookseller ? You do not know him. What does it treat of ? Of the German language.

Always, immer.

of, von, (dat)

wise, weise.

the bookseller, der Buchhändler, l.

does belong, gehört.

händler, l.

gave you it ? hat es Ihnen gegeben.

you do not know him, Sie kennen ihn nicht.

I bought, ich kaufte.

does it treat, handelt es.

the day before yesterday, of, von, (dat).

- vorgestern.

II.

Which of those two women is your mother ? and which of those students is your brother ? Which is the best Ger-

man grammar written in English ? In what shop have you bought those copperplates ? To whom do you intend to give them ? What do you say to this paper ? From what town do you get these books ? My brother gave me them, who did not tell me, in what town he has bought them. Which sword will you give me ? What do you look at ? What news is there ? What do they say about town ?

The woman, die Frau, 4.
 the student, der Student, 3.
 German grammar written in
 English, deutsche englisch
 geschriebene Sprachlehre.
 the shop, der Laden, 1.
 have you, haben Sie ?
 the copperplate, der Kupfer-
 stich, 2.
 bought, gekauft.
 do you intend, wollen Sie.
 give, geben.]
 do you say, fagen Sie.
 to, zu, (dat.).
 the paper, das Papier, 2.

from, aus, (dat.).
 the town, die Stadt, 4.
 do you get, bekommen Sie.
 gave me, gab mir.
 who did not tell me, der mir
 nicht sagte.
 the sword, der Degen, 1.
 will you, wollen Sie.
 at, nach, (dat.)
 do you look, sehen Sie.
 news, die Neuigkeit, 1.
 is there, giebt es.
 do they say, sagt man.
 about town, in der Stadt.

V.

Of relative pronouns.

Relative pronouns are employed, in order to avoid in complex phrases a repetition of the substantives which have been already mentioned. At the same time they serve to combine two phrases. For instance, when I say : die Liebe ist eine Leidenschaft ; die Liebe machte viele Menschen

sehr unglücklich, these words are two separated phrases. But when I use a relative pronoun instead of the repeated substantive, and say : die Liebe ist eine Leidenschaft, welche viele Menschen sehr unglücklich machte, love is a passion that rendered many men very unhappy, the two phrases are united together.

The substantive which the relative pronouns represent, is called the *antecedent* (das vorhergehende Hauptwort).

The relative pronouns are welcher, welche, welches, and der, die, daß, which has the same signification ; as, mein Freund, welcher or der mir diesen Brief schrieb, my friend who wrote me this letter. Also wer and was are relative pronouns, and are rendered in English by *he who, he that, what*. For instance, wer ein gutes Leben führt, wird dafür belohnt werden, he that lives a good life, will be rewarded for it ; was Sie sagen, ist nur zu wahr, what you say is but too true. Wer and was properly represent at the same time a demonstrative and relative pronoun, so that wer stands instead of derjenige, welcher, and was instead of dasjenige, welches ?

It is to be observed that the genitive singular and plural of the pronoun welcher is not in use, but that always the genitive singular and plural of the pronoun der is employed. For instance, der Mann, dessen Kinder Sie gesehen haben, ist sehr arm, the man whose children you have seen, is very poor.

The relative pronouns are declined thus :

		Singular.	
		Masculine.	Feminine.
N.	welcher, who, which, welche, who, which, that.		
	that.		

G. *welches*, whose, of *welcher*, whose, of which, of which, of that. that.

D. *welchem*, to whom, to *welcher*, to whom, to which, which, to that. to that.

A. *welchen*, whom, which, *welche*, whom, which, that. that.

Neuter.

• N. *welches*, who, which, that.

G. *welches*, whose, of which, of that.

D. *welchem*, to whom, to which, to that.

A. *welches*, who, which, that.

Plural for all three genders.

N. *welche*, who, which, that. D. *welchen*, to whom, to which.

G. *welcher*, of whom, of A. *welche*, whom, which, which. that.

	Singular.	
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. <i>der</i> .	<i>die</i> .	<i>das</i> .
G. <i>dessen</i> .	<i>deren</i> .	<i>dessen</i> .
D. <i>dem</i> .	<i>der</i> .	<i>dem</i> .
A. <i>den</i> .	<i>die</i> .	<i>das</i> .

Plural for all three genders.

N. <i>die</i> .	D. <i>denen</i> .
G. <i>deren</i> .	A. <i>die</i> .

Declension of the relative pronoun *wer*.

N. *wer*, *was*.

D. *wem*.

G. *wessen*.

A. *wen*, *was*.

Exercises on relative pronouns.

I.

Here is the money which I owe you, and the books that you have lent me. I am much obliged to you for the kindness you have shewn me, and I shall endeavour to render myself worthy of your friendship. The vast regions which Alexander the great had conquered, fell into the hands of his successors who established several monarchies, which did not last a long time.

Here is, hier ist.

the money, das Geld, 5.

owe, schuldig bin.

have lent, geliehen haben.

I am much obliged to you,

ich bin Ihnen sehr verbun-

den.

for, für, (acc.)

the kindness, die Güte, 4.

Take notice, that *which*,

that is omitted after kind-

ness in English, must be

expressed in German.

have shewn, bewiesen haben.

I shall endeavour, ich werde

mich bestreben.

myself, mich.

the friendship, die Freunds-

schaft, 4.

to render worthy, würdig zu
machen.

vast, sehr groß.

the region, die Gegend, 4.

das Land, 5.

had conquered, erobert hat-

te.

fell, fielen.

into, in (acc.)

the successor, der Nachfol-

ger, 1.

several, verschiedene.

the monarchy, die Monar-

chie, 4.

established, gründeten.

not a long time, nicht lange.

did last, dauerten,

II.

The ^{plum} which we have found in the meadow, that we have bought from your neighbour, are not as good as those which grow in your garden. The place of which I spoke some days ago is very unwholesome. The servant maid to whom you gave such fine melons the day before yesterday, has several good qualities. His mother who was a little indisposed last night, did not come.

The plum, die Pflaume, 4.	spoke, sprach.
in, auf, (dat.).	very unwholesome, sehr un-
the meadow, die Wiese, 4.	gesund.
have found, gefunden haben.	the servant maid, die Magd,
from, von, (dat.).	4.
the neighbour, der Nachbar,	you, Sie.
sing. 1. plur. 3.	such, so.
have bought, gekauft haben.	fine, schön.
are not as good, sind nicht so	the melone, die Melone, 4.
gut.	the day before yesterday,
as, als.	vorgestern.
in, in, (dat.).	gave, gaben.
the garden, der Garten, 1.	the quality, die Eigenschaft,
grow, wachsen.	4.
the place, der Ort, 5.	a little, ein wenig.
of, von, (dat.).	indisposed, unpaß.
I, ich.	last night, gestern Abend.
some days ago, vor einigen	was, war.
Tagen.	dit not come, kam nicht.

III.

The elephant which we have seen last year, is perhaps the largest of all those which have ever come to America.

The rules that we have read and explained hitherto, are easy and so adapted, that every child can understand and apply them. But those which remain, are incomparably more difficult. They explain the construction of phrases, which often is different from the English construction. The German verbs which are very complicate, will occupy us a long time.

The elephant, der Elephant,	apply, anwenden.
3.	can, kann.
we, wir.	remain, übrig bleiben.
last year, vergangenes Jahr.	incomparably, ungleich.
have seen, gesehen haben.	difficult, schwer.
perhaps, vielleicht.	explain, erklären.
large, groß.	the construction, die Wort,
of all those, von allen den,	fügung, 4.
jenigen.	the phrase, der Satz, 2.
ever, jemals.	from, von, (dat.).
to, nach.	English, englisch.
have come, gekommen sind.	often, oft.
the rule, die Regel.	different, verschieden.
hitherto, bisher.	German, deutsch.
have read and explained, ge-	the verb, das Zeitwort, 5.
lesen und erklärt haben.	very, sehr.
are, sind.	complicate, verwickelt.
easy, leicht	will us, werden uns.
so adapted, so beschaffen.	long, lang.
that, daß.	the time, die Zeit, 4.
every child, jedes Kind.	occupy, beschäftigen.
understand, verstehen.	

VI.

Of improper pronouns.

The improper pronouns which are properly no pronouns, but adjectives or adverbs, and also are called indefinite pronouns (*unbestimmte Fürwörter*), comprehend the rest of the words employed instead of substantives. Some are indeclinable; as, *man*, one; *etwas*, something; *nichts*, nothing; *viel*, much; *wenig*, little; *ein wenig*, a little. The following improper pronouns are declined: *aller*, *alle*, *alles*, all; *Alles*, all, every thing; *alle*, all; *anderer*, *andere*, *anderes*, other; *ein Anderer*, another; *Andere*, others; *einige* or *etliche andere*, some others; *beide*, both; *einer*, *eine*, *eines*, one; *der eine*, *die eine*, *das eine*, the one; *einer*, *eine*, *eines von beiden*, either; *Einer*, somebody; *einiger*, *einige*, *einigez*, some; *etliche*, some; *ein gewisser*, *eine gewisse*, *ein gewisses*, a certain; *jeder*, *jede*, *jedes*, each, every; *ein jeder*, *eine jede*, *ein jedes*, every one; *Jedermann*, every body; *Jemand*, somebody; *kein*, *keine*, *kein*, no; *keiner*, *keine*, *keines*, none; *Keiner kann ausgenommen werden*, none can be excepted; *keiner von beiden*, neither; *mancher*, *manche*, *manches*, many a; as, *mancher Mann*, many a man, *manche Stunde*, many an hour; *Mancher*, many a one; *Niemand*, nobody; *solcher*, *solche*, *solches*, such; as, *ein solcher Mann*, such a man; *ein Solcher verdient unser Mitleid*, such a one deserves our pity; *solche*, such; *Verschiedenes*, several things; *verschiedene*, several; *viel*, *viele*, *vieles*, much; *viele*, many; *wenig*, *wenige*, *weniges*, little; *das Wenige*, the little; *wenige*, few; *ich hatte nur wenige*, I had but a few; *in wenigen Wochen*, in a few weeks.

Alle, ein, einer, jeder, kein, keiner, mancher, solcher, viel, are declined exactly like the demonstrative pronouns dieser and jener ; as :

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. ein, einer.	eine.	ein, eines.
G. eines.	einer.	eines.
D. einem.	einer.	einem.
A. einen.	eine.	ein.

But der eine is declined in the following manner :

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. der eine.	die eine.	das eine.
G. des einen.	der einen.	des einen.
D. dem einen.	der einen.	dem einen.
A. den einen.	die eine.	das eine.

Anderer and ein gewisser are declined thus :

Singular

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. anderer, der andere.	andere, die andere.	anderes, das andere.
G. des anderen or andern.	der anderen or andern.	des anderen or andern.
D. dem anderen or andern.	der anderen or andern.	dem anderen or andern.
A. den anderen or andern.	andere, die andere.	anderes, das andere.

Plural for all three genders.

N. andere.	D. anderen or anderst.
G. anderer,	A. andere.

N. die anderen or andern. D. den anderen or andern.
 G. der anderen or andern. A. die anderen or andern.

Singular.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N.	ein gewisser.	eine gewisse.	ein gewisses.
G.	eines gewissen.	einer gewissen.	eines gewissen.
D.	einem gewissen.	einer gewissen.	einem gewissen.
A.	einen gewissen.	eine gewisse.	ein gewisses.

Plural for all three genders.

N.	gewisse.	D.	gewissen.
G.	gewisser.	A.	gewisse.
N.	die gewissen.	D.	den gewissen.
G.	der gewissen.	A.	die gewissen.

Beide, einige, etliche, verschiedene, viele, wenige, are declined like the plural of the demonstrative pronouns dieser and jener, or like andere and gewisse. Jedermann, Jemand, Niemand are declined thus :

N.	Jedermann, Jemand,	D.	Jedermann, Jemanden,
	Niemand.		Niemanden.
G.	Jedermanns, Jemandes,	A.	Jedermann, Jemanden,
	Niemandes.		Niemanden.

Some improper pronouns are absolute, or substantives ; others are conjunctive, or adjectives ; others are sometimes absolute, and sometimes conjunctive.

Exercises on improper pronouns.

I.

Every body has a certain vanity, and all men have their particular faults. Every thing under the sun is subject to

change. Our whole life is nothing but a perpetual change. All men are subject to error; there is not one of them, who does not sometimes say something that is not true; the one, because he deceives himself, and the other, because he wants to deceive. We see many people who, not content with what their parents have left them, give themselves much pains, in order to acquire great wealth.

The vanity, die Eitelkeit, 4.	truc, wahr.
particular, besunder.	is, ist.
the fault, der Fehler, 1.	because, weil.
under, unter, (dat.).	deceives himself, sich betrügt.
the sun, die Sonne, 4.	wants to deceive, betrügen
the change, die Veränderung,	will.
4.	we see, wir sehen.
subject, unterworfen.	the people, die Leute, plur.
whole, ganz.	2.
the life, das Leben, 1.	not content, nicht zufrieden.
but, daß.	with what, mit dem, was.
perpetual, immerwährend.	the parents, die Aeltern,
the error, der Irrthum, 5.	plur. 3.
there is, es ist.	have left, hinterlassen haben.
of, unter, (dat.).	give themselves, geben sich.
not, nicht.	the pains, die Mühe, 4.
sometimes, manchmal.	in order, um sich.
does say something, etwas	the wealth, das Vermögen,
sagt.	1. der Reichthum, 5.
that, was.	to acquire, zu erwerben.

II.

Both are dead long ago. They were attacked on both wings. You may take both if you will. It was seen on each side. He is wiser than either of us. He is here almost

every day. Few men are content. Neither of us has seen it. She was in no small fear about it. You have no good beds. Did you hear no news in town? In other places it would not do. Others are not of your opinion. Will he stay here some time? Was somebody here asking for me? Such a one ought to be punished. He made such a noise that nobody could stay in the room.

Long ago, schon längst.

dead, todt.

were, wurden.

on, auf, (dat.).

the wing, der Flügel, 1.

attacked, angegriffen.

you may, Sie können.

take, nehmen.

if you will, wenn Sie wollen.

was, wurde.

the side, die Seite, 4.

seen, gesehen.

wise, weise.

either, einer.

of, von, (dat.).

almost, beinahe, fast.

the day, der Tag, 2.

here, hier.

neither, keiner.

about it, deswegen.

small, gering.

the fear, die Furcht, 4.

you have, Sie haben.

good, gut.

the bed, das Bett, sing. 2-plur. 3.

did you hear, hörten Sie.

the news, die Neuigkeit, 4.

in town, in der Stadt.

in, an, (dat.).

the place, der Ort, 2. It is to be observed, that this word has in the plural die Orte, (2.) and die Dörfer, (5.).

it would not do, würde das nicht angehen.

of your, Ihrer.

the opinion, die Meinung, 4.

will he, wird er.

some, einige.

the time, die Zeit, 4.

here, hier.

stay, bleiben.

asking for me, der nach mir fragte.

ought to be punished, sollte	that, daß.
bestraft werden.	the room, das Zimmer, 1.
made, machte.	could stay, bleiben konnte.
the noise, das Geräusch, 2.	te.
der Lärm, 2.	

CHAPTER XV.

OF NUMBERS.

Numbers serve to mark a quantity of things. They are either *cardinal* or *ordinal* numbers.

Cardinal numbers (die Grundzahlwörter) are those which properly mark the number of things.

Ordinal numbers (die Ordnungszahlwörter) are those which distinguish the class of things, or the order, in which they follow after one another.

I.

The cardinal numbers.

eins, one.	sechs, six.
zwei, two.	sieben, seven.
drei, three.	acht, eight.
vier, four.	neun, nine.
fünf, five.	zehn, ten.

elf, eleven.	sieben und zwanzig, twenty seven.
zwölf, twelve.	acht und zwanzig, twenty eight.
dreizehn, thirteen.	neun u. zwanzig, twenty nine.
vierzehn, fourteen.	dreißig, thirty.
fünfzehn, fifteen.	ein und dreißig, thirty one.
sechzehn, sixteen.	zwei und dreißig, thirty two.
siebenzehn, seventeen.	vierzig, forty.
achtzehn, eighteen.	fünfzig, fifty.
neunzehn, nineteen.	sechzig, sixty.
zwanzig, twenty.	siebenzig, seventy.
ein und zwanzig, twenty one.	achtzig, eighty.
zwei und zwanzig, twenty two.	neunzig, ninety.
drei und zwanzig, twenty three.	hundert, hundred.
vier und zwanzig, twenty four.	hundert und eins, hundred and one.
fünf und zwanzig, twenty five.	tausend, thousand.
sechs und zwanzig, twenty six.	tausend und eins, thousand and one.

Observation.

I. All these numbers are indeclinable, except *eins*, *zwei* and *drei*. *Eins* has in the nominative *ein*, *eine*, *ein*, when it is a constructive adjective, and is declined like the indefinite article. *Zwei* and *drei* are declined thus :

N. *zwei*, two.
G. *zweier*, of two.

D. *zweien*, to two.
A. *zwei*, two.

N. drei, three.

D. dreien, to three.

G. dreier, of three.

A. drei, three.

For the rest all cardinal numbers in their absolute state take the termination *en* in the dative, except *sieben* and *zehn*.

II. Fractions of numbers are put before the name of a thing which is reckoned or numbered; as, *zwei und ein halber Thaler*, two dollars and a half; *drei und drei Viertel Pfund*, three pounds and three quarters. In naming the hour of the day the numbers are either put alone, or the word *Uhr* (clock) is added; as, *es schlägt eins*, or *ein Uhr*, it strikes one; *es ist acht*, or *acht Uhr*, it is eight o'clock; *es war ein Viertel auf sieben*, *als ich diesen Morgen hier war*, it was a quarter after six when I was here this morning; *es ist drei Viertel auf elf*, 'tis three quarters after ten (literally: three quarters upon eleven); *ich will um halb neun wiederkommen*, I will come again at half an hour after eight; *es schlägt ein Viertel auf sechs*, *halb sechs*, it strikes a quarter past five, half past five.

III. When the cardinal and ordinal numbers are associated with substantives, they stand either with the genitive or with the prepositions *von* and *unter*; as, *zwei meiner besten Freunde*, or *zwei von meinen besten Freunden sind todt*, two of my best friends are dead; *der erste von oder unter ihnen*, the first of them.

IV. *Elf* is pronounced *elf*, and is also very often written in this manner. *Siebenzehn* and *siebenzig* are commonly pronounced *siebzehn* and *siebzig*.

II.

The ordinal numbers.

der erste, the first.	der ein und zwanzigste, the twenty first.
der zweite, the second.	der zwei und zwanzigste, the twenty second.
der dritte, the third.	der dreißigste, the thirtieth.
der vierte, the fourth.	der ein und dreißigste, the thirty first.
der fünfte, the fifth.	der zwei und dreißigste, the thirty second.
der sechste, the sixth.	der vierzigste, the fortieth.
der siebente, the seventh.	der ein und vierzigste, the forty first.
der achte, the eighth.	der zwei und vierzigste, the forty second.
der neunte, the ninth.	der fünfzigste, the fiftieth.
der zehnte, the tenth.	der sechzigste, the sixtieth.
der elfte, elfte, the eleventh.	der siebenzigste, the seven- tieth.
der zwölfte, the twelfth.	der achtzigste, the eightieth.
der dreizehnte, the thir- teenth.	der neunzigste, the ninetieth.
der vierzehnte, the four- teenth.	der ein und neunzigste, the ninety first.
der fünfzehnte, the fifteenth.	der hundertste, the hundredth.
der sechzehnte, the sixteenth.	der tausendste, the thou- sandth.
der siebenzehnte, the seven- teenth.	
der achtzehnte, the eigh- teenth.	
der neunzehnte, the nine- teenth.	
der zwanzigste, the twentieth.	

Observations.

I. The ordinal numbers are formed in German by adding to the cardinal numbers the syllables *te* and *ter*, *ste*.

and *ster*. The syllable *te* is added to the seventeen first cardinal numbers after the definite article, and the syllable *ter* after the indefinite one: *der zweite*, the second; *ein zweiter*, a second, etc. *Einß*, one, and *brei*, three, are excepted: *der erste*, the first; *ein erster*, a first; *der dritte*, the third; *ein dritter*, a third. The syllable *ste* is added to all the other cardinal numbers after the definite article, and the syllable *ster* after the indefinite one: *der zwanzigste*, the twentieth; *ein zwanzigster*, a twentieth.

II. The ordinal numbers are adjectives, and are declined like the other adjectives; as :

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. <i>der zweite</i> , the second.	<i>die zweite</i> , the second.	<i>Das zweite</i> , the second.
G. <i>des zweiten</i> , of the second.	<i>der zweiten</i> , of the second.	<i>des zweiten</i> , of the second.
D. <i>dem zweiten</i> , to the second.	<i>der zweiten</i> , to the second.	<i>dem zweiten</i> , to the second.
A. <i>den zweiten</i> , the second.	<i>die zweite</i> , the second.	<i>das zweite</i> , the second.
N. <i>ein zweiter</i> , a second.	<i>eine zweite</i> , a second.	<i>ein zweites</i> , a second.
G. <i>eines zweiten</i> , of a second.	<i>einer zweiten</i> , of a second.	<i>eines zweiten</i> , of a second.
D. <i>einem zweiten</i> , to a second.	<i>einer zweiten</i> , to a second.	<i>einem zweiten</i> , to a second.
A. <i>einen zweiten</i> , a second.	<i>eine zweite</i> , a second.	<i>ein zweites</i> , a second.

When the ordinal numbers are added to the names of princes, they are declined in the same manner ; as :

N. Heinrich der Vierte, Henry the fourth.

G. Heinrichs des Vierten, of Henry the fourth.

D. Heinrich dem Vierten, to Henry the fourth.

A. Heinrich den Vierten, Henry the fourth.

When a title goes before the name of a prince, this title is not declined: König Heinrichs des Vierten, of king Henry the fourth.

III. First, in the first place, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, etc. are rendered in German by *erstens*, or *zum ersten* ; *zweitens*, or *zum zweiten*, *drittens*, or *zum dritten*, *viertens*, or *zum vierten*, and so on. In this case the ordinal numbers are employed as adverbs.

IV. Besides the cardinal and ordinal numbers, there are numbers of proportion, distributive numbers, and collective numbers.

The numbers of proportion (*die Verhältnißzahlwörter*) are formed in German by adding to the cardinal numbers the syllables *mal*, *fach* and *fältig* ; as, *einmal*, once ; *zweimal*, twice ; *dreimal*, thrice ; *viermal*, four times ; *einfach*, single ; *zweifach* or *zweifältig*, twofold ; *dreifach* or *dreifältig*, threefold ; *vierfach* or *vierfältig*, fourfold ; *fünffach* or *fünffältig*, fivefold ; *hundertfach* or *hundertfältig*, hundredfold ; *tausendfach* or *tausendfältig*, thousandfold.

V. The following numbers are distributive numbers (*Theilungszahlwörter*) : *die Hälfte*, (the) half ; *ein Drittheil*, a third ; *das Drittheil*, the third part ; *ein Viertel*, a fourth ; *das Viertel*, the fourth part ; *ein Achttheil*, an

eighth; ein Sechzehnthel, a sixteenth; einzeln, single; paarweise, by pairs.

VI. Collective numbers (Sammlungszahlwörter) are the following: ein Duzend, a dozen; ein halbes Duzend, half a dozen; eine Mandel, a number of fifteen; ein Paar, a pair, a couple; ein Schock, three score, sixty; ein halbes Schock, thirty; ein Viertelsfund, a quarter of a pound; ein Viertelshundert, twenty five.

Exercises on numbers.

I.

Lewis, tell me, who discovered America? An Italian, called Christopher Columbus, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety two. Who invented gunpowder? They say, that a monk, called Berthold Schwartz, invented it in the year one thousand three hundred and eighty two. Who invented printing? A German, called John Guttenberg, in the year one thousand four hundred and forty. Who invented watches? Peter Helle, citizen of Nuremberg. Do you also know, who invented air-balloons? Yes, Sir, they were two Frenchmen, called Montgolfier, who invented them in the year one thousand seven hundred and eighty three.

Lewis, Ludwig.
tell me, sagen Sie mir.
who discovered America?

wer hat Amerika entdeckt?
the Italian, der Italiener, 1.
called, Namens.

Christopher, Christoph.
in the, im, (instead of in
dem).
the year, das Jahr, 2.
who invented? wer hat er-
funden?

the gunpowder, das Schießpulver, 1.	citizen of Nuremberg, ein Nürnberger Bürger.
they say, man sagt.	do you also know? wissen Sie auch?
that, daß.	
the monk, der Mönch, 2.	the air-balloon, der Luftball, 2.
printing, die Buchdrucker- kunst, 4.	yes, Sir, ja, mein Herr.
a German, ein Deutscher.	they were, es waren.
John, Johann.	the Frenchman, der Franzose, 3.
the watch, die Taschenuhr, 4.	invented, erfunden haben.

II.

Gellert, an excellent German author, died in the year 1769. Rousseau and Voltaire died in the year 1778. The greatest of all the kings of the house of Bourbon was Henry IV., who reigned in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. Lewis XIII., his son, inherited his crown, but not his great qualities. Lewis XIV. the son of Lewis XIII., reigned in the seventeenth century, and died in the beginning of the eighteenth, namely, in the year 1715, after having reigned 72 years. Lewis the XV., his great grandchild, succeeded him in the fifth year of his age, and died in the year 1774; so that he had reigned almost 60 years. Lewis XVI.; his unfortunate grandson, who had deserved a better fate, succeeded him, and died in the year 1793, on the 21st of January. Lewis XVIII., his brother, was king of France since the year 1814.

Excellent, vortrefflich.	the king, der König, 2.
the author, der Schriftsteller.	the house of Bourbon, das Haus (5.) Bourbon.
died, starb; starben.	the century, das Jahrhundert
all the; alle.	

bert, 2. In German the singular must be put.	the great grandchild, der Urenkel, 1.
reigned, regierte.	succeeded him, folgte ihm.
inherited, erbt.	the age, das Alter, 1.
the crown, die Krone, 4.	so that, so daß.
but not, aber nicht.	almost, fast.
the quality, die Eigenschaft, 4.	unfortunate, unglücklich.
in the, im, (instead of in dem).	the grandson, der Enkel, 1.
the beginning, der Anfang, 2.	better, besser.
namely, nämlich.	the fate, das Schicksal, 2.
after having reigned. nach dem er regiert hatte.	had deserved, verdient hatte.
	on the 21st of January, am or den 21sten Januar.
	since, seit, (dat.).

III.

He has two children, a good and a bad one. He has a thousand good qualities. She has but one child. Twice one is two. Three times one is three. Twice two is four. Three times three is nine. Four times four is sixteen. Five times five is twenty five. Six times six is thirty six. Seven times seven is forty nine. Eight times eight is sixty four. Nine times nine is eighty one. Ten times ten is hundred. Ten times a hundred is a thousand. One million is a thousand times a thousand, or ten hundred thousand.

Bad, böse.

one is not expressed in German.

a thousand, tausend.

but, nur.

three times, dreimal.

five times, fünfmal.

six times, sechsmal.

seven times, *siebenmal*.

eight times, *achtmal*.

nine times, *neunmal*.

ten times, *zehnmal*.

a hundred, *hundert*.

the million, *die Million*, 4.

a thousand times, *tausendmal*.

CHAPTER XVI.

OF VERBS.

There are four principal objects to be considered in verbs, namely: the *form*, the *moods*, the *tenses*, the *conjugation*.

There are three kinds of verbs, and these three kinds are what is called the *form* of a verb.

The decisions expressed by verbs may signify 1) an action which is exerted upon some exterior object and done by the subject or nominative of the phrase; 2) some exterior object acting upon the subject or nominative; 3) the existence of the subject, or some modification of being peculiar to it; and 4) an action done by the subject, but which it exerts upon no exterior object. Thence arise three kinds of verbs:

I. The *active* verb (*das thätige Zeitwort*) which expresses an action done by the subject of the phrase, and exerted upon some exterior object. For instance: *der Gerechte liebt Gott*, the just man loves God. Here *der Gerechte*, the just man, is the subject; *Gott*, God, is the exterior object towards whom the actions of loving is directed,

H. The *passive* verb (*das leidende Zeitwort*) which expresses an action exercised by some interior object upon the subject. Example: *der Gerechte wird von Gott geliebt*, the just man is loved by God. Here *der Gerechte*, *the just man*, is the subject: *Gott*, *God*, is the exterior object by which the action of loving is exercised.

III. The *neuter* verb which expresses the existence of the subject, or some modification of his being, and an action done by the subject, but which it does not exert upon any exterior object. Examples: *Peter ist vorhanden*, Peter exists. Here *Peter*, *Peter*, is the subject of the phrase, and the neuter verb attributes to him existence. *Ludwig fällt*, Lewis falls. Here *Ludwig*, *Lewis*, is the subject of the phrase, and commits the action of falling which he does not exert upon any exterior object.

The *moods* (*die Modi, die Arten*) of verbs are different ways of employing them, according as the decision we want to express, is positive, conditional, or serves to imply an order, etc.

There are five moods of verbs, which are called thus: the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, the *infinitive* and the *participles*.

The *indicative* mood (*der Indicativ* or *die anzeigende Art*) is that which simply and positively expresses an affirmative or negative decision. For instance: *ich weiß*, I know; *ich dachte*, I thought; *ich werde lesen*, I shall read.

The *subjunctive* or *conjunctive* mood (*der Conjunctiv, or die verbindende Art*) is that which marks some action or mode of being, dependent upon the principal verb of the phrase, and which, of itself, would not express a full sense. Example: *man wünscht, daß er spräche*, they are desirous, that he should speak. The verb *er spräche*, *he should*

speaks, is in the subjunctive, because the action of speaking which this verb implies, depends upon the principal verb *man wünscht*, *they are desirous*, and because the verb *er spräche*, *he should speak*, does not express a full sense of itself.

The subjunctive or conjunctive mood is governed by some conjunction expressed or understood. Example : *ich werde sprechen, wenn ich auch das Opfer davon sein sollte*, I will speak, even if I should be the victim of it ; *er wird sprechen, sollte er auch das Opfer davon seyn*, he will speak, should he be the victim of it. It is seen, that in the second example the conjunction *wenn*, *if*, which is expressed in the first, is simply understood. In the same manner they say in German : *wenn er ginge*, or *ginge er*, if he went.

The *imperative* mood (*der Imperativ*, or *die gebietende Art*) is that which we use, in order to express an order or a request, etc. Example : *sagen Sie dem Kutscher, daß er anspanne*, tell the coachman, to put the horses to.

The *infinitive* mood (*der Infinitiv*, or *die unbestimmte Art*) is that which we employ, in order to express a sort of decision, without attributing the action or modification of being implied by the verb to any subject. For instance : *lieben*, to love ; *denken*, to think.

Participles (*die Mittelmörter*) are not properly moods. They are simply adjectives derived from verbs, which express at the same time a sentence and a quality, or an attribute belonging to a substantive.

Tenses (*die Zeiten*) are different ways of applying the moods, in order to denote all the relations of time expressed by the verbs.

There are in German eight tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive, namely : the *present* (*die gegenwärtige*

Zeit), the *imperfect* (die unvollendete Zeit), the *perfect* (die vergangene Zeit), the *pluperfect* (die mehr als vollkommen vergangene Zeit), the *future* (die zukünftige Zeit), the *future relative*, the *conditional present* and the *conditional past*.

There are two things to be remarked in each tense, namely: the *numbers* and the *persons* (die Zahlen und die Personen).

There are two numbers, as in nouns, the *singular* and *plural*; and three persons, as in the pronouns, the *first*, *second* and *third*, both in the singular and plural. The first is that which speaks, the second that to which is spoken, and the third that of which we speak.

To recite a verb according to its moods and tenses, is what is called its *conjugation* (seine Abwandlung).

Of the auxiliary verbs of the German language.

The German language has, as the English and other languages, *auxiliary verbs* (Hülfszeitwörter).

By auxiliary verbs are understood those which we make use of, in order to form the conjugation without their assistance.

The Germans have three auxiliary verbs, namely: *werden*, to become; *seyn*, to be; *haben*, to have. I have given to the verb *werden* the first place, because some tenses of the auxiliary verbs *seyn* and *haben* cannot be formed without its assistance.

Müssen, *sollen* and *wollen* may also be considered in some measure as auxiliary verbs.

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb werden, to become.

Indicative.

Present.

Singular.

Ich werde, I become.
Du wirst, thou becomest.
Er wird, he becomes.

Plural.

Wir werden, we become.
Ihr werdet, you become.
Sie werden, they become.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Ich wurde, or ich ward, I became.
Du wurdest, or du wardst, thou becamest.
Er wurde, or er ward, he became.

Plural.

Wir wurden, we became.
Ihr wurdet, you became.
Sie wurden, they became.

Perfect.

Singular.

Ich bin geworden, I have become.
Du bist geworden, thou hast become.
Er ist geworden, he has become.

Plural.

Wir sind geworden, we have become.
Ihr seid geworden, you have become.
Sie sind geworden, they have become.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Ich war geworden, I had become.
Du warest geworden, thou hadst become.
Er war geworden, he had become.

Plural.

Wir waren geworden, we had become.
Ihr waret geworden, you had become.
Sie waren geworden, they had become.

Future.

Singular.

Ich werde werden, I shall become.

Plural.

Wir werden werden, we shall become.

Du wirst werden, thou wilt become.	Ihr werdet werden, you will become.
Er wird werden, he will become.	Sie werden werden, they will become.

Relative future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde geworden seyn, I shall have become.	Wir werden geworden seyn, we shall have become.
Du wirst geworden seyn, thou wilt have become.	Ihr werdet geworden seyn, you will have become.
Er wird geworden seyn, he will have become.	Sie werden geworden seyn, they will have become.

Conditional present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde werden, I should or would become.	Wir würden werden, we should or would become.
Du würdest werden, thou shouldst become.	Ihr würdet werden, you should become.
Er würde werden, he should become.	Sie würden werden, they should become.

Conditional past.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde geworden seyn, I should or would have become.	Wir würden geworden seyn, we should or would have become.
Du würdest geworden seyn, thou shouldst have become.	Ihr würdet geworden seyn, you should have become.
Er würde geworden seyn, he should have become.	Sie würden geworden seyn, they should have become.

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
Werde (du), become (thou).	Werdet (ihr), become (you).
Werde er, become he.	Werden sie, become they.

S u b j u n c t i v e.

Present.

Singular

Plural.

Ich werde, I may become.

Wir werden, we may become.

Du werdest, thou mayst become.

Ihr werdet, you may become.

Er, sie, es werde, he, she, it may become.

Sie werden, they may become.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich würde, I might become.

Wir würden, we might become.

Du würdest, thou mightst become.

Ihr würdet, you might become.

Er würde, he might become.

Sie würden, they might become.

Perfect.

Singular.

Plural.

• Ich sey geworden, I may have become.

Wir seyen geworden, we may have become.

Du seyst geworden, thou mayst have become.

Ihr seyd geworden, you may have become.

Er sey geworden, he may have become.

Sie seyen geworden, they may have become.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich wäre geworden, I might have become.

Wir wären geworden, we might have become.

Du wärest geworden, thou mightst have become.

Ihr wäret geworden, you might have become.

Er wäre geworden, he might have become.

Sie wären geworden, they might have become.

Future.	
Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde werden, I shall become.	Wir werden werden, we shall become.
Du werdest werden, thou wilt become.	Ihr werdet werden, you will become.
Er werde werden, he will become.	Sie werden werden, they will become.

Relative Future.	
Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde geworden seyn, I shall have become.	Wir werden geworden seyn, we shall have become.
Du werdest geworden seyn, thou wilt have become.	Ihr werdet geworden seyn, you will have become.
Er werde geworden seyn, he will have become.	Sie werden geworden seyn, they will have become.

Infinitive.	
Present.	Past.
Werden, to become.	Geworden seyn, to have become.

Participles.	
Present.	Past.
Werdend, becoming.	Geworden, become.

This verb governs the nominative.

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb seyn, to be.

Indicative.	
Present.	
Singular.	Plural.
Ich bin, I am.	Wir sind, we are.
Du bist, thou art.	Ihr seyd, you are.
Er, sie, es ist, he, she, it is.	Sie sind, they are.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Ich war, I was.
 Du warst, thou wast.
 Er war, he was.

Plural.

Wir waren, we were.
 Ihr waret, you were.
 Sie waren, they were.

Perfect.

Singular.

Ich bin gewesen, I have been.
 Du bist gewesen, thou hast
 been.
 Er ist gewesen, he has been.

Plural.

Wir sind gewesen, we have
 been.
 Ihr seyd gewesen, you have
 been.
 Sie sind gewesen, they have
 been.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Ich war gewesen, I had been.
 Du warest gewesen, thou
 hadst been.
 Er war gewesen, he had
 been.

Plural.

Wir waren gewesen, we had
 been.
 Ihr waret gewesen, you had
 been.
 Sie waren gewesen, they
 had been.

Future.

Singular.

Ich werde seyn, I shall be.
 Du wirst seyn, thou wilt be.
 Er wird seyn, he will be.

Plural.

Wir werden seyn, we shall
 be.
 Ihr werdet seyn, you will
 be.
 Sie werden seyn, they will
 be.

Relative future.

Singular.

Ich werde gewesen seyn, I
 shall have been;

Plural.

Wir werden gewesen seyn,
 we shall have been;

Du wirst gewesen seyn, thou wilt have been.	Ihr werdet gewesen seyn, you will have been.
Er wird gewesen seyn, he will have been.	Sie werden gewesen seyn, they will have been.

Conditional present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde seyn, I should or would be.	Wir würden seyn, we should or would be.
Du würdest seyn, thou shouldst be.	Ihr würdet seyn, you should be.
Er würden seyn, he should be.	Sie würden seyn, they should be.

Conditional past.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde gewesen seyn, I should or would have been.	Wir würden gewesen seyn, we should or would have been.
Du würdest gewesen seyn, thou shouldst have been.	Ihr würdet gewesen seyn, you should have been.
Er würde gewesen seyn, he should have been.	Sie würden gewesen seyn, they should have been.

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
Seh (du), be (thou).	Sehd (ihr), be (you).
Seh er, be he.	Sehn sie, be they.

Subjunctive.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich sey, I may be.	Wir seyen, we may be.
Du sehest or seyst, thou mayst be.	Ihr sehd, you may be.
Er, sie, es sey, he, she, it may be.	Sie seyen, they may be.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich wäre, I might be.
 Du wärest, thou mightst be.
 Er wäre, he might be.

Wir wären, we might be.
 Ihr wäret, you might be.
 Sie wären, they might be.

Perfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich sey gewesen, I may have
 been.
 Du seyst gewesen, thou
 mayst have been.
 Er sey gewesen, he may have
 been.

Wir seyen gewesen, we may
 have been.
 Ihr seyd gewesen, you may
 have been.
 Sie seien gewesen, they may
 have been.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich wäre gewesen, I might
 have been.
 Du wärest gewesen, thou
 mightst have been.
 Er wäre gewesen, he might
 have been.

Wir wären gewesen, we
 might have been.
 Ihr wäret gewesen, you
 might have been.
 Sie wären gewesen, they
 might have been.

Future.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde seyn, I shall be.
 Du werdest seyn, thou wilt
 be.
 Er werde seyn, he will be.

Wir werden seyn, we shall
 be.
 Ihr werdet seyn, you will
 be.
 Sie werden seyn, they will
 be.

Relative future.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde gewesen seyn, I
 shall have been.

Wir werden gewesen seyn,
 we shall have been.

Du werdest gewesen seyn, Ihr werdet gewesen seynst,
 thou wilt have been. you will have been.
 Er werde gewesen seyn, he Sie werden gewesen seyn,
 will have been. they will have been.

Infinitive.

Present.	Past.
Seyn, to be.	Gewesen seyn, to have been.

Participles.

Present.	Past.
Sehend, being.	Gewesen, been.

This verb governs the nominative.

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb haben, to have.

Indicative.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe, I have.	Wir haben, we have.
Du hast. thou hast.	Ihr habet, or ihr habt, you have.
Er, sie, es hat, he, she, it has.	Sie haben, they have.

Imperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hatte, I had.	Wir hatten, we had.
Du hattest, thou hadst.	Ihr hattet, you had.
Er hatte, he had.	Sie hatten, they had.

Perfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe gehabt, I have had.	Wir haben gehabt, we have had.

Du hast gehabt, thou hast -had.	Ihr habet gehabt, you have had.
Er hat gehabt, he has had.	Sie haben gehabt, they have had.

Pluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hatte gehabt, I had had.	Wir hatten gehabt, we had had.
Du hattest gehabt, thou hadst had.	Ihr hattet gehabt, you had had.
Er hatte gehabt, he had had.	Sie hatten gehabt, they had had.

Future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde haben, I shall have.	Wir werden haben, we shall have.
Du wirst haben, thou wilt have.	Ihr werdet haben, you will have.
Er wird haben, he will have.	Sie werden haben, they will have.

Relative future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had.	Wir werden gehabt haben, we shall have had.
Du wirst gehabt haben, thou wilt have had.	Ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had.
Er wird gehabt haben, he will have had.	Sie werden gehabt haben, they will have had.

Conditional present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde haben, I should or would have.	Wir würden haben, we should or would have.

Du würdest haben, thou shouldst have.	Ihr würdet haben, you, should have.
Er würde haben, he should have.	Sie würden haben, they should have.

Conditional past.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde gehabt haben, I should or would have had.	Wir würden gehabt haben, we should or would have had.
Du würdest gehabt haben, thou shouldst have had.	Ihr würdet gehabt haben, you should have had.
Er würde gehabt haben, he should have had.	Sie würden gehabt haben, they should have had.

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
Habe (du), have (thou). Habe er, have he.	Habet (ihr), have (you). Haben sie, have they.

S u b j u n c t i v e.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe, I may have.	Wir haben, we may have.
Du habest, thou mayst have.	Ihr habet, or ihr habt, you may have.
Er, sie, es habe, he, she, it may have.	Sie haben, they may have.

Imperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hätte, I might have.	Wir hätten, we might have.
Du hättest, thou mightst have.	Ihr hättet, you might have.
Er hätte, he might have.	Sie hätten, they might have.

Perfect.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Ich</i> habe gehabt, I may have had.	<i>Wir</i> haben gehabt, we may have had.
<i>Du</i> habest gehabt, thou mayst have had.	<i>Ihr</i> habet gehabt, you may have had.
<i>Er</i> habe gehabt, he may have had.	<i>Sie</i> haben gehabt, they may have had.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Ich</i> hätte gehabt, I might have had.	<i>Wir</i> hätten gehabt, we might have had.
<i>Du</i> hättest gehabt, thou mightst have had.	<i>Ihr</i> hättet gehabt, you might have had.
<i>Er</i> hätte gehabt, he might have had.	<i>Sie</i> hätten gehabt, they might have had.

Future.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Ich</i> werde haben, I shall have.	<i>Wir</i> werden haben, we shall have.
<i>Du</i> werdest haben, thou wilt have.	<i>Ihr</i> werdet haben, you will have.
<i>Er</i> werde haben, he will have.	<i>Sie</i> werden haben, they will have.

Relative future.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Ich</i> werde gehabt haben, I shall have had.	<i>Wir</i> werden gehabt haben, we shall have had.
<i>Du</i> werdest gehabt haben, thou wilt have had.	<i>Ihr</i> werdet gehabt haben, you will have had.
<i>Er</i> werde gehabt haben, he will have had.	<i>Sie</i> werden gehabt haben, they will have had.

Infinitive.

Present.
haben, to have.

Past.
Gehabt haben, to have had.

Participles.

Present.
habend, having.

Past.
Gehabt, had.

Of regular verbs.

The greatest part of the German verbs is regular.

Regular verbs (*regelmäßige Zeitwörter*) are those which are conjugated according to certain invariable rules. All verbs which terminate in *eln*, *ern*, *igen*, *iren*, and *zen*, as also almost all the verbs derived from substantives or adjectives, belong to this class.

All regular verbs which are not at the same time verbs neuter, produce themselves reciprocally in two different ways, the one active and the other passive, according as the action which they announce, has been done or suffered by the subject. Thence arise for the conjugation of these verbs two forms, the *active* and the *passive* (*das Activ, die handelnde oder wirkende Form, das Passiv oder die leidende Form*).

Simple tenses (*einfache Zeiten*) are those which do not employ auxiliary verbs for their formation.

Compound tenses (*zusammengesetzte Zeiten*) are those that are formed by the help of auxiliary verbs. All the tenses of the active and passive form are compound, the present and imperfect of the active excepted.

In every verb is chiefly to be considered the infinitive, the present, the imperfect, and the participle past.

The infinitive always terminates in *en*, if we except those infinitives whose final letter is preceded by an *l* or an *r*. In that case an *n* without an *e* is simply added ; as : *schmeicheln*, to flatter ; *fordern*, to demand. In order to form the present, the *n* is taken away from the infinitive ; as : *lieben*, to love ; *ich liebe*, I love. The first person singular has therefore an *e* ; the second person has *est* ; and the third *et*. The first person plural has *en* ; the second *et*, and the third *en*. The subjunctive has an *e* in the third person singular.

In order to form the imperfect, only the syllable *te* is added to the present ; as : *ich liebe*, I love ; *ich liebete*, I loved.

In order to form the participle past, the letter *e* is taken away from the imperfect, and the syllable *ge* is put before it, which is called the augmentation ; as : *ich liebete*, I loved ; *geliebet*, loved.

The perfect is formed by adding to the participle past, the present of the auxiliary verb *haben* ; as : *ich habe geliebt*, I have loved.

The future is formed by adding to the infinitive the present of the auxiliary verb *werden* ; as : *ich werde lieben*, I shall love.

The relative future is formed by adding to the participle past the future of the auxiliary verb *haben* ; as : *ich werde geliebt haben*, I shall have loved.

The conditional present is formed by adding to the infinitive the imperfect of the subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *werden* ; as : *ich würde lieben*, I should love.

The conditional past is formed by adding to the participle of the past the conditional present of the auxiliary verb *haben* ; as : *ich würde geliebt haben*, I should have loved.

The passive is formed by the help of the auxiliary verb *werden*, and of the participle past ; as : *geliebt werden*, to be loved ; *ich werde geliebt*, I am loved.

Conjugation of the regular verb *loben*, to praise.

ACTIVE.

Indicative.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Ich lobe</i> , I praise.	<i>Wir loben</i> , we praise.
<i>Du lobest</i> , or <i>lobst</i> , thou praisest.	<i>Ihr lobet</i> or <i>lobt</i> , you praise.
<i>Er, sie, es lobet</i> or <i>lobt</i> , he, she, it praises.	<i>Sie loben</i> , they praise.

Imperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Ich lobete</i> or <i>lobte</i> , I praised.	<i>Wir lobeten</i> or <i>lobten</i> , we praised.
<i>Du lobetest</i> or <i>lobtest</i> , thou praisedst.	<i>Ihr lobetet</i> or <i>lobtet</i> , you praised.
<i>Er lobete</i> or <i>lobte</i> , he praised.	<i>Sie lobeten</i> or <i>lobten</i> , they praised.

Perfect.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Ich habe gelobt</i> , I have praised.	<i>Wir haben gelobt</i> , we have praised.

Du hast gelobt, thou hast praised.	Ihr habet gelobt, you have praised.
Er hat gelobt, he has praised.	Sie haben gelobt, they have praised.

Pluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hatte gelobt, I had praised.	Wir hatten gelobt, we had praised.
Du hattest gelobt, thou hadst praised.	Ihr hattet gelobt, you had praised.
Er hatte gelobt, he had praised.	Sie hatten gelobt, they had praised.

Future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde loben, I shall praise.	Wir werden loben, we shall praise.
Du wirst loben, thou wilt praise.	Ihr werdet loben, you will praise.
Er wird loben, he will praise.	Sie werden loben, they will praise.

Relative future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised.	Wir werden gelobt haben, we shall have praised.
Du wirst gelobt haben, thou wilt have praised.	Ihr werdet gelobt haben, you will have praised.
Er wird gelobt haben, he will have praised.	Sie werden gelobt haben, they will have praised.

Conditional present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde loben, I should praise.	Wir würden loben, we should praise.

Du würdest loben, thou shouldst praise.	Ihr würdet loben, you should praise.
Er würde loben, he should praise.	Sie würden loben, they should praise.

Conditional past.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde gelobt haben, I should have praised.	Wir würden gelobt haben, we should have praised.
Du würdest gelobt haben, thou shouldst have praised.	Ihr würdet gelobt haben, you should have praised.
Er würde gelobt haben, he should have praised.	Sie würden gelobt haben, they should have praised.

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
Lobe (du), praise (thou).	Lobet (ihr), praise (you).
Lobe er, praise he, or let him praise.	Loben sie, praise they, or let them praise.

S u b j u n c t i v e.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich lobe, I may praise.	Wir loben, we may praise.
Du lobest or lobst, thou mayst praise.	Ihr lobet or löt, you may praise.
Er, sie, es lobe, he, she, it may praise.	Sie loben, they may praise.

Imperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich lobete or lobte, I might praise.	Wir lobeten or lobten, we might praise.

Du lobetest or lobtest, thou mightest praise.	Ihr lobetet or lobtet, you might praise.
Er lobete or lobte, he might praise.	Sie lobeten or lobten, they might praise.

Perfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe gelobt, I may have praised.	Wir haben gelobt, we may have praised.
Du habest gelobt, thou mayst have praised.	Ihr habet or habt gelobt, you may have praised.
Er habe gelobt, he may have praised.	Sie haben gelobt, they may have praised.

Pluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hätte gelobt, I might have praised.	Wir hätten gelobt, we might have praised.
Du hättest gelobt, thou mightst have praised.	Ihr hättet gelobt, you might have praised.
Er hätte gelobt, he might have praised.	Sie hätten gelobt, they might have praised.

Future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde loben, I shall praise.	Wir werden loben, we shall praise.
Du werdest loben, thou wilt praise.	Ihr werdet loben, you will praise.
Er werde loben, he will praise.	Sie werden loben, they will praise.

Relative future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised.	Wir werden gelobt haben, we shall have praised.

Du werdest gelobt haben, Ihr werdet gelobt haben,
 thou wilt have praised. you will have praised.
 Er werde gelobt haben, he Sie werden gelobt haben,
 will have praised. they will have praised.

Infinitive.

Present.

Past.

Loben, to praise.

Gelobt haben, to have
praised.

Participles.

Present.

Past.

Lobend, praising.

Gelobet or gelobt, praised.

PASSIVE.

Indicative.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde gelobt, I am praised.	Wir werden gelobt, we are praised.
Du wirst gelobt, thou art praised.	Ihr werdet gelobt, you are praised.
Er, sie, es wird gelobt, he, she, it is praised.	Sie werden gelobt, they are praised.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich wurde or ward gelobt, I was praised.	Wir wurden gelobt, we were praised.
Du wurdest or wardest gelobt, thou wast praised.	Ihr wurdet gelobt, you were praised.
Er wurde or ward gelobt, he was praised.	Sie wurden gelobt, they were praised.

Perfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised.

Du bist gelobt worden, thou hast been praised.

Er ist gelobt worden, he has been praised.

Wir sind gelobt worden, we have been praised.

Ihr seyd gelobt worden, you have been praised.

Sie sind gelobt worden, they have been praised.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich war gelobt worden, I had been praised.

Du warest gelobt worden, thou hadst been praised.

Er war gelobt worden, he had been praised.

Wir waren gelobt worden, we had been praised.

Ihr waret gelobt worden, you had been praised.

Sie waren gelobt worden, they had been praised.

Future.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised.

Du wirst gelobt werden, thou wilt be praised.

Er wird gelobt werden, he will be praised.

Wir werden gelobt werden, we shall be praised.

Ihr werdet gelobt werden, you will be praised.

Sie werden gelobt werden, they will be praised.

Relative future.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde gelobt worden seyn, I shall have been praised.

Du wirst gelobt worden seyn, thou wilt have been praised.

Wir werden gelobt worden seyn, we shall have been praised.

Ihr werdet gelobt worden seyn, you will have been praised.

Er wird gelobt worden seyn, he will have been praised.
Sie werden gelobt worden seyn, they will have been praised.

Conditional present.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich würde gelobt werden, I should be praised.	Wir würden gelobt werden: we should be praised.
Du würdest gelobt werden, thou shouldst be praised.	Ihr würdet gelobt werden, you should be praised.
Er würde gelobt werden, he should be praised.	Sie würden gelobt werden; they should be praised.

Conditional past.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich würde gelobt worden seyn, I should have been praised.	Wir würden gelobt worden seyn, we should have been praised.
Du würdest gelobt worden seyn, thou shouldst have been praised.	Ihr würdet gelobt worden seyn, you should have been praised.
Er würde gelobt worden seyn, he should have been praised.	Sie würden gelobt worden seyn, they should have been praised.

Imperative.

Singular.

Plural.

Werde (du) gelobt, be (thou) praised.	Werdet (ihr) gelobt, be (you) praised.
Werde er gelobt, be he praised, or let him be praised.	Werden sie gelobt, be they praised, or let them be praised.

Subjunctive.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde gelobt, I may be praised. **Wir werden gelobt, we may be praised.**

Du werdest gelobt, thou mayst be praised. **Ihr** werdet gelobt, you may be praised.

Er, sie, es werde gelobt, he, she, it may be praised. **Sie** werden gelobt, they may be praised.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich würde gelobt, I might be praised.

Wir würden gelobt, we might be praised.

Du würdest gelobt, thou mightst be praised.

Ihr würdet gelobt, you might be praised.

Er würde gelobt, he might be praised.

Sie würden gelobt, they might be praised.

Perfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich sey gelobt worden, I may have been praised.

Wir seyen gelobt worden, we may have been praised.

Du seyst gelobt worden, thou mayst have been praised.

Ihr seyd gelobt worden, you may have been praised.

Er sey gelobt worden, he may have been praised.

Sie seyen gelobt worden, they may have been praised.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich wäre gelobt worden, I might have been praised.

Wir wären gelobt worden, we might have been praised.

Du wärest gelobt worden, thou mightst have been praised.

Ihr wäret gelobt worden, you might have been praised.

Er wäre gelobt worden, he might have been praised.

Sie wären gelobt worden, they might have been praised.

Future.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised.

Wir werden gelobt werden, we shall be praised.

Du werdest gelobt werden, thou wilt be praised.	Ihr werdet gelobt werden, you will be praised.
Er werde gelobt werden, he will be praised.	Sie werden gelobt werden, they will be praised.

Relative future.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde gelobt worden seyn, I shall have been praised.	Wir werden gelobt worden seyn, we shall have been praised.
Du werdest gelobt worden seyn, thou wilt have been praised.	Ihr werdet gelobt worden seyn, you will have been praised.
Er werde gelobt worden seyn, he will have been praised.	Sie werden gelobt worden seyn, they will have been praised.

Infinitive.

Present.

Past.

Gelobt werden, to be prai- sed.	Gelobt worden seyn, to have been praised.
------------------------------------	--

 Observation.

I. The mark of active verbs is, that *werden* may be prefixed to them, and they therefore may be changed into passive verbs. *Ich verderbe*, I spoil, may for instance be commuted into *ich werde verdorben*, I am spoiled. Thus *verderben* is an active verb. Every active verb may consequently become a passive verb. For as the active verbs express an action exerted upon some exterior object, not only somebody must exist doing an action, but also an object, upon which the action is exercised, which therefore

suffers something. When I say for instance: *ich schlage den Nagel in die Wand*, I strike the nail into the wall, the nail is the exterior object to which my action relates, which consequently suffers something, and I may then also say: *der Nagel wird von mir in die Wand geschlagen*, the nail is struck by me into the wall.

Some verbs are properly neuter verbs, that is, they act not upon another object; but they may become active verbs, when I add such an object. When I say for instance: *ich sehe*, I see, every one does understand me, without thinking of another object. *Sehen* is therefore in itself a neuter verb. But I may change it into an active verb, when I add an object and say: *ich sehe den Baum*, I see the tree.

II. The Germans have, as the English, but one regular conjugation, which is so simple and so natural, that a slight glance over the conjugated verb *loben* is sufficient, to make the rules concerning the formation of the tenses fully understood.

III. When the verb *werden* is employed to form the passive of other verbs, it has in the participle past *worden*, and not *geworden*; as: *ich bin geliebt worden*, I have been loved.

IV. The participle of the past is formed, as we have seen, in regular verbs by commuting the final syllable of the infinitive into *et*, or simply into *t*, with the addition of the initial syllable *ge*. But this rule does admit of two exceptions. These two exceptions are:

1) The syllable *ge* is not affixed to the participle past of verbs derived from some foreign language. For instance: infinitive, *commandiren*, to command; participle past, *commandirt*, commanded; infinitive, *regieren*, to reign; participle past, *regiert*, reigned.

2) The syllable *ge* is also not affixed to verbs commencing with some particle that is foreign to the verb itself, as *be*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, etc. Examples: infinitive, *erzählen*, to relate; participle past, *erzählt*, related; infinitive, *übersetzen*, to translate; participle past, *übersetzt*, translated.

Of verbs neuter.

The verbs neuter (*die unthätigen Zeitwörter*) of the German language have no peculiar conjugation, but are conjugated like active verbs.

Some neuter verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *haben*, and others with the auxiliary verb *seyn*. Those which are conjugated with *seyn*, are conjugated in the same manner as those with *haben*, with the exception of the compound tenses which are conjugated with *seyn*, as :

Begegnen, to meet.

I n d i c a t i v e.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich bin begegnet, I have met.

Wir sind begegnet, we have met.

Du bist begegnet, thou hast met.

Ihr seid begegnet, you have met.

Er ist begegnet, he has met.

Sie sind begegnet, they have met.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich war begegnet, I had met, etc.

Wir waren begegnet, we had met, etc.

Relative future.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde begegnet seyn, I *Wir werden begegnet seyn,*
 shall have met, etc. we shall have met, etc.

Conditional past.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich würde begegnet seyn, Wir würden begegnet seyn;
 I should have met, etc. we should have met, etc.

S u b j u n c t i v e.

Perfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich sey begegnet I may have. *Wir seyen begegnet, we may.*
 met, etc. have met, etc.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich wäre begegnet, I might *Wir wären begegnet, we*
 have met, etc. might have met, etc.

Relative Future.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde begegnet seyn, I *Wir werden begegnet seyn,*
 shall have met, etc. we shall have met, etc.

Infinitive.

Past.

Begegnet seyn, to have met.

Observations.

I. The verbs neuter which more denote an action, are conjugated with *haben*, and those which more express a suffering or a variation mostly produced without the help of the subject, with *seyn*. Examples : *ich habe gestritten, geblutet, geblühet, gedrohet ; ich bin gefallen, gestorben, gerathen*. But as this rule yet admits of many exceptions, I shall in the following list point out several neuter verbs which are conjugated with *haben* or with *seyn*.

Verbs neuter which are conjugated with
h a b e n.

Abblühen.	Brausen.	Grünen.	Lügen.
Abfärben.	Brüllen.	Grunzen.	Missfallen.
Ahnen.	Dampfen.	Hangen.	Müssen.
Altern.	Darben.	Heissen.	Nützen.
Aneckeln.	Dauern.	Helfen.	Pfeifen.
Anstehen.	Donnern.	Herrühren.	Reifen.
Aufbrausen.	Drohen.	Hinreichen.	Ringeln.
Aufhören.	Duften.	Reifen.	Rinnen.
Ausblühen.	Dürfen.	Reimen.	Rudern.
Ausbrausen.	Dursten.	Rlingen.	Ruhen.
Ausstehen.	Fechten.	Rnallen.	Schallen.
Beben.	Fehlen.	Rnieen.	Scheinen.
Bedürfen.	Gellen.	Rönnen.	Schlafen.
Bewohnen.	Gelten.	Kränkeln.	Schläfern.
Bellen.	Glänzen.	Lassen.	Echlummern.
Blizen.	Gleichen.	Leben.	Schmachten.
Blühen.	Glühen.	Leiden.	Schnieben.
Bluten.	Glücken.	Liegen.	Schreien.

Schweben.	Stehen.	Tönen.	Willfahren.
Schweigen.	Straucheln.	Träumen.	Zaubern.
Schwindeln.	Tagen.	Wachen.	
Sitzen.	Taugen.	Weinen.	

Verbs neuter which are conjugated with
s e y n.

Abfallen.	Bleiben.	Gedeihen.	Schreiten.
Abgehen.	Einfahren.	Gelingen.	Schwellen.
Ankommen.	Erblassen.	Genesen.	Schwinden.
Aufsteigen.	Erbleichen.	Gerathen.	Sinken.
Aufkommen.	Erfalten.	Gerinnen.	Springen.
Aufleben.	Erfranken.	Herumirren.	Steigen.
Aufwachen.	Erlöschen.	Kriechen.	Sterben.
Ausarten.	Erschütten.	Landen.	Stranden.
Ausdorren.	Ersterben.	Laufen.	Straucheln.
Ausspringen.	Fallen.	Reisen.	Stürzen.
Begegnen.	Fliegen.	Kennen.	Verarmen.
Versten	Fliehen.	Schleichen.	Wachsen.

II. Almost all the verbs neuter to which the syllable *er* and *ver* are prefixed, are conjugated with *seyn*. Examples: *erfrieren*, *erstaunen*, *erwachen*, *verbleichen*, *verfließen*, *verwelken*, etc. The following verbs are excepted: *erhellen*, *ermangeln*, *verlauten*, *verweilen*, *verzweifeln*.

III. Those neuter verbs which are used now in a more active, now in a more passive sense, are conjugated now with *seyn*, now with *haben*. Examples: *das Wasser ist gefroren*; *es hat gefroren*; *der Wagen ist umgeworfen*;

der Fuhrmann h a t umgeworfen ; ich b i n diesen Weg eingeschlagen ; der Blitz h a t eingeschlagen ; er i st ihm gefolgt ; er h a t gefolgt (obeyed) ; ich b i n nach Leipzig geritten ; ich h a b e den ganzen Tag geritten ; er i st auf den Baum geklettert ; er h a t den ganzen Tag geklettert ; der Baum i st ausgeschlagen ; das Pferd h a t ausgeschlagen ; er i st ans Land geschwommen ; er h a t auf dem Teiche geschwommen ; er i st in die Stadt geeilt ; er h a t mit der Arbeit geeilt ; das Schiff i st nach Amerika gesegelt ; es h a t schnell gesegelt ; die Feuchtigkei t i st ausgedampft ; die Kohle h a t ausgedampft.

IV. Some neuter verbs have the same infinitive, but they have a different signification which requires either *haben* or *seyn*. Thus *weichen*, to soften, is conjugated with *haben*, and *weichen*, to give way, to retire, with *seyn*.

V. Many verbs having the same infinitive, are employed as active and neuter verbs, and are therefore conjugated either with *haben* or *seyn*. Examples : der Feind h a t mehrere Städte abgebrannt ; mein Bruder i st abgebrannt ; er h a t das Schloß abgeschlagen ; das Getreide i st abgeschlagen ; er h a t den Feind geflohen ; er i st vor dem Feinde geflohen.

Of compound verbs,

Compound verbs (*zusammengesetzte Zeitwörter*) are those which, besides the two radical syllables of which almost all the German verbs are formed, yet take in the beginning one or more syllables by which their meaning is qualified. There are two kinds of compound verbs. Those of the first kind take in the beginning a particle termed *insepar-*

able, because it retains its place throughout all the tenses ; as *beschreiben*, to describe ; *berathschlagen*, to consult. Those of the second kind take in the beginning a particle or some other word termed *separable* or *disjunctive*, because it does not retain its place throughout all the tenses ; as *zusammensetzen*, to compose ; *er setzte zusammen*, he composed ; *nachahmen*, to imitate ; *ich ahme nach*, I imitate ; *fortgehen*, to go away ; *ich ging fort*, I went away ; *vorübergehen*, to pass by ; *er ging vorüber*, he passed by ; *todt schlagen*, to kill ; *ich schlug todt*, I killed.

The compound verbs of the first class are conjugated, as if they were simple, with the exception of the participle past which does not take the additional syllable *ge* ; as *verabreden*, to concert ; participle past, *verabredet*, concerted. From this rule are excepted those compound verbs, to whose root the syllable *miß* is added. These verbs form the participle past in a regular manner, affixing to it the syllable *ge*. Thus *mißhandeln*, to treat ill, has in its past participle *gemißhandelt*, treated ill. The verb *antworten*, to answer, has also in its participle past *geantwortet*, answered.

The following particles are constantly inseparable from their verbs : *after*, *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *hinter*, *miß*, *ur*, *ver*, *verab*, *verun*, *voll*, *wider*, *zer*. Examples : *afterreden*, to speak ill ; *beflecken*, to contaminate ; *empfangen*, to receive ; *entheiligen*, to profane ; *ertragen*, to support ; *gefallen*, to please ; *hintergehen*, to deceive ; *mißverstehen*, to misunderstand ; *urtheilen*, to judge ; *verschlingen*, to swallow up ; *verabsäumen*, to neglect ; *verunreinigen*, to pollute ; *vollziehen*, to execute ; *widersprechen*, to contradict ; *zerreißen*, to tear.

The verbs *empfangen*, *ertragen*, *gefallen*, *hintergehen*, *mißverstehen*, *verschlingen*, *vollziehen*, *widersprechen* and *zerreißen* are irregular, and have in their participle past: *empfangen*, *ertragen*, *gefallen*, *hintergangen*, *mißverstanden*, *verschlungen*, *vollzogen*, *widersprochen*, *zerrißen*. *Vollmachen*, being properly two words, is excepted.

Durch and *unter* are inseparable and disjunctive words. When they are inseparable from their verbs, they have another signification, as when they are disjunctive words. Examples: *übersetzen*, to translate; present, *ich übersetze*; imperfect, *ich übersetzte*; participle past, *übersetzt*; *übersetzen*, to pass the river; present, *ich setze über*; imperfect, *ich setzte über*; participle past, *übergesetzt*; *durchreisen*, to travel through; present, *ich durchreise*; imperfect, *ich durchreiste*; perfect, *ich habe durchgereist*; *durchreisen*, to pass through; present, *ich reise durch*; imperfect, *ich reisete durch*; perfect, *ich bin durchgereist*; *durchlaufen*, to run through; present, *ich durchlaufe*; imperfect, *ich durchlief*; perfect, *ich habe durchlaufen*; *durchlaufen*; present, *ich laufe durch*; perfect, *ich bin durchgelaufen*; *durchgehen*, to go through; present, *ich durchgehe*; imperfect, *ich durchging*; perfect, *ich habe durchgegangen*; *durchgehen*, to pass through; to run away; present, *ich gehe durch*; imperfect, *ich ging durch*; perfect, *ich habe dieses Buch durchgegangen*; I did run over this book. In the same manner *um* is employed in compound verbs; as *umgehen*, *ich umgehe*, *ich umging*, *ich habe umgangen*; *umgehen*, *ich gehe um*, *ich ging um*, *ich bin umgegangen*.

The compound verbs of the second class are parted from their disjunctive particle in the present, in the imperfect and in the imperative. Examples: *fortsetzen*, to prosecute; present, *ich setze fort*, I prosecute; imperfect, *ich setzte fort*.

I prosecuted ; imperative, setzen Sie Ihre Erzählung fort, prosecute your recital ; sich vorbereiten, to prepare ; present, ich bereite mich vor, I prepare ; imperfect, er bereitete sich auf eine lange Reise vor, he prepared for a long journey ; aufstehen, to rise ; present, ich stehe alle Tage um fünf Uhr des Morgens auf, I rise every day at five o'clock in the morning ; imperfect, wir standen um zwei Uhr vom Tische auf, we rose from table at two o'clock ; imperative, stehet auf, ihr faulen Burschen, rise up, ye lazy fellows. But in the infinitive, the future and the conditional present of these verbs the additional particle retains its place. For instance : abschreiben, to copy ; ich werde abschreiben, I shall copy ; ich würde abschreiben, I should copy.

The participle past of these verbs and the tenses that are formed by its help, namely the perfect and the pluperfect, the relative future and the past conditional, retain before them the additional particle, after which comes the characteristic syllable of the past participle *ge*. Example : beifügen, to add ; past participle, beigefügt, added ; perfect, ich habe beigefügt, I have added, etc.

When the particle *zu* is to be affixed to the infinitive of these verbs, it must be inserted between the disjunctive particle and the verb. Example ; um beizufügen, in order to add.

The compound verbs of the second class are conjugated like other verbs, as the following instance will shew.

Vorstellen, to represent.

ACTIVE.

Indicative present.
Imperfect.
Perfect.

Ich stelle vor, etc.
Ich stellte vor, etc.
Ich habe vorgestellt, etc.

Pluperfect.	Ich hatte vorgestellt, etc.
Future.	Ich werde vorstellen, etc.
Relative future.	Ich werde vorgestellt haben, etc.
Conditional present.	Ich würde vorstellen, etc.
Conditional past.	Ich würde vorgestellt haben, etc.
Imperative.	Stelle vor, stellst vor.
Present participle.	Vorstellend.
Past participle.	Vorgestellt.

PASSIVE.

Indicative present.	Ich werde vorgestellt, etc.
Imperfect.	Ich wurde vorgestellt, etc.
Perfect.	Ich bin vorgestellt worden, etc.
Pluperfect.	Ich war vorgestellt worden, etc.
Future.	Ich werde vorgestellt werden etc.
Relative future.	Ich werde vorgestellt worden seyn, etc.
Infinitive.	Vorgestellt werden.
Imperative.	Werde vorgestellt, werdet vorgestellt.

Observations.

The subjunctive is conjugated just as the indicative, with the exception of the variations peculiar to this mood.

Of verbs reflected and reciprocal.

Reflected verbs (zurückwirkende Zeitwörter) denote an action directed by the subject of the phrase or the nominative towards itself, and not towards an exterior object. Examples : ich bade mich, I bathe myself ; ich setze mir vor, I propose to myself.

Besides the nominative of the personal pronoun, these verbs also take after them, as the preceding instances shew, the accusative or the dative of this pronoun, accordingly as they govern the one or the other of these cases. They all associate in the third person of every number and gender the reflected personal pronoun *sich*, whatever their regimen may be.

The reflected verb is sometimes used instead of a passive verb; as: *Alles lernt sich mit der Zeit*, instead of *Alles wird mit der Zeit gelernt*, every thing learns itself in time, or is learnt in time.

Reciprocal verbs express the agency of several subjects which mutually act upon one another. Example: *liebet euch einander*, love ye one another. The personal pronoun *sich* may be put or omitted; as: *gute Brüder lieben sich einander*, or simply *lieben einander*, good brothers love one another.

These sorts of verbs, the greatest part of which governs the accusative, may be comprehended under the general appellation of pronominal verbs. They are conjugated like other verbs, namely thus:

I n d i c a t i v e.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich kleide mich an, I dress myself.

Du kleidest dich an, thou dressest thyself.

Er, sie kleidet sich an, he dresses himself, she dresses herself.

Wir kleiden uns an, we dress ourselves.

Ihr kleidet euch an, you dress yourselves.

Sie kleiden sich an, they dress themselves.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich kleidete mich an, I dressed myself, etc. *Wir kleideten uns an, we dressed ourselves, etc.*

Perfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich habe mich angekleidet, I have dressed myself, etc. *Wir haben uns angekleidet, we have dressed ourselves, etc.*

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich hatte mich angekleidet, I had dressed myself, etc. *Wir hatten uns angekleidet, we had dressed ourselves, etc.*

Future.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde mich ankleiden, I shall dress myself, etc. *Wir werden uns ankleiden, we shall dress ourselves, etc.*

Relative future.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich werde mich angekleidet haben, I shall have dressed myself, etc. *Wir werden uns angekleidet haben, we shall have dressed ourselves, etc.*

Conditional present.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich würde mich ankleiden, I should dress myself, etc. *Wir würden uns ankleiden, we should dress ourselves, etc.*

Conditional past.

Singular.

Plural.

Ich würde mich angekleidet haben, I should have dressed myself, etc. **Wir** würden uns angekleidet haben, we should have dressed ourselves, etc.

Imperative.

Singular.

Plural.

Kleide dich an, dress thyself, etc. **Kleidet euch** an, dress yourselves, etc.

Infinitive.

Present.

Past.

Sich ankleiden, to dress one's self. **Sich** angekleidet haben, to have dressed one's self.

Of impersonal verbs.

Impersonal verbs (unpersönliche Zeitwörter) are such as are only used in the infinitive, and in the third person singular in all tenses. The following impersonal verb may serve as example.

Indicative.

Present.

Es regnet, it rains.

Imperfect.

Es regnete, it rained.

Perfect.

Es hat geregnet, it has rained.

Pluperfect.

Es hatte geregnet, it had rained.

Future.

Es wird regnen, it will rain.

Relative future.

Es wird geregnet haben, it will have rained.

Conditional present.

Es würde regnen, it would rain.

Conditional past.

Es würde geregnet haben, it would have rained.

S u b j u n c t i v e.

Present.

Es regne, it may rain.

Imperfect.

Es regnete, it rained.

Perfect.

Es habe geregnet, it has rained.

Pluperfect.

Es hätte geregnet, it had rained.

Future.

Es werde regnen, it will rain.

Relative future.

Es werde geregnet haben, it will have rained.

Infinitive.

Present.

Regnen, to rain.

Past

Geregnet haben, to have
rained.

Observations.

There are common verbs in German, which are conjugated like impersonal verbs. For instance: *es giebt*, there is, there are; *es gab*, there was, there were. Examples: *es ist kalt*, it is cold; *es giebt keinen so vollkommenen Menschen, der nicht seine Fehler hätte*, there is no man so perfect but he has his faults; *es giebt viele Leute, die an nichts als an das Essen und Trinken denken*, there are many people who think of nothing but of eating and drinking.

II. There are impersonal pronominal verbs in German, such as *es schickt sich*, it becomes, etc.

III. The impersonal pronominal verbs take after them the accusative or the dative of the personal pronoun through all persons; as: *es reuet mich*, I repent; *es reuet dich*, thou repentest; *es wird ihn reuen*, he shall repent; *es eckelt mir*, I am disgusted; *es eckelt dir*, thou art disgusted.

Of irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs (die unregelmäßigen Zeitwörter) are those which are not inflected according to the common standard of conjugation. They deviate, for the most part, in the second and third person singular of the present indicative, in the imperfect of the same mood, and in the past participle from the conjugation of regular verbs.

Some irregular verbs are less, others more irregular. Thence arise the following two classes of irregular verbs:

I. Some have, like the regular verbs, in the imperfect *te*, and in the participle *t*. But the vowel of the last syllable but one of the infinitive of these verbs is changed in all the persons of the present and imperfect indicative, and in the past participle. Example: infinitive, *wissen*, to know; present, *ich weiß*, *du weißt*, *er weiß*; imperfect, *ich mußte*; past participle, *gewußt*. The class of these verbs is much less numerous than the second.

II. Others having, for the most part, but one syllable in the first and third person of the imperfect indicative, have not in the participle *et*, but *en*, and commute usually the syllable but one of the infinitive in the imperfect indicative now into *a*, now into *ie*, now into *i*, now into *o*, and now into *u*. Examples: infinitive, *spinnen*, to spin; imperfect, *ich spann*, *er spann*; participle, *gesponnen*; infinitive, *bleiben*, to remain; imperfect, *ich blieb*, *er blieb*; participle, *geblieben*; infinitive, *fangen*, to catch; imperfect, *ich fing*, *er fing*; participle, *gefangen*; infinitive, *biegen*, to bend; imperfect, *ich bog*, *er bog*; participle, *gebogen*; infinitive, *fahren*, to ride in a carriage; imperfect, *ich fuhr*, *er fuhr*; participle, *gefahren*. Besides the verbs of this class are usually irregular in the second and third person singular of the present indicative. For these two persons lose the *e*, which in regular verbs precedes the *st* of the second person, and the *t* of the third person. Examples: infinitive, *brechen*, to break; present singular, *ich breche*, *du brichst*, *er bricht*; infinitive, *spinnen*, to spin; present singular, *ich spinne*, *du spinnst*, *er spinnst*. However several verbs of this class from their present tense in a regular manner. For instance: infinitive, *bleiben*, to remain; present, *ich bleibe*, *du bleibest* or *bleibst*, *er bleibet* or *bleibt*, etc.

The present of the subjunctive is usually formed in these verbs after that of the indicative. It is only to be observed, that the suppression of the *e* of the second and third person of this tense does not take place. Example : infinitive, *sprechen*, to speak ; present of the subjunctive, *ich spreche* ; *du sprichst*, *er spreche*, etc.

The *a*, *o* and *u* of the imperfect indicative are commuted in the imperfect of the subjunctive into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. Examples : infinitive, *trinken*, to drink ; imperfect of the indicative, *ich trank* ; imperfect of the subjunctive, *ich tränke* ; infinitive, *fliegen*, to fly ; imperfect of the indicative, *ich flog* ; imperfect of the subjunctive, *ich flöge* ; infinitive, *wachsen*, to grow ; imperfect of the indicative, *ich wuchs* ; imperfect of the subjunctive, *ich wüchse*. Some verbs are excepted from this rule.

The second person singular of the imperative active is formed by changing the *e* of the last syllable but one of the infinitive into *ie* or *i* in the verbs, which undergo the same change in the second and third person of the present singular of the indicative. Examples : infinitive, *geben*, to give ; present, *ich gebe*, *du giebst*, *er giebt* ; imperative, *stehen*, to prick ; present, *ich steche*, *du stichst*, *er sticht* ; imperative, *stich*.

In order to facilitate the use of the irregular verbs, they follow here in an alphabetical list. The number of them is considerable. Formerly it was more considerable yet ; but it has decreased with the progressive cultivation of the language. For several verbs that in preceding ages had an

irregular form, are now regularly conjugated. Others may be conjugated in a regular or irregular manner. — For such is the nature of the human mind, that it dislikes anomalies, and always tends towards regularity, by which its operations are facilitated.

AN ALPHABETICAL LIST

of the

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

OF VERBS.

179

	Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Conjunctive.	Imperat.	Past Participle.
to bake	Baden	ich bade, du bädst, er bädzt	ich bad	ich büte	bad	gebaden
to stipulate	Bedingen	ich bedinge, du bedingst, er bedingt	ich bed	ich bedünge,	bedinge	bedungen
to command	Befehlen	ich befehle, du befehlst, er befehlt	ich be	ich befohle	befieh!	befohlen
to study	Besleissen (sich)	ich besleisse, du besleissest, er besleisst	ich bes	ich besleisse	besleisse o. besleiss	beslissen
to begin	Beginnen	ich beginne, du beginnst, er beginnt	ich beg	ich begänne	beginne	begonnen
to bite	Beissen	ich beisse, du beißest, er beißt	ich biß	ob. begönnte ich biße	beisse ob. beiß	gebissen
to bark	Bellen	ich belle, du bellst (biffst), er bellt	ich belle	ich bellte (bölle)	belle (bill)	gebellt (ge- bollen)
to conceal	Bergen	ich berge, du birgst, er birgt	ich barg	ich bürge ob. bürge	birg	geborgen

	Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Conjunctive.	Imperat.	Past participle.
to burst	Versthen	ich berste, du berstest, er berstet	ich berst, du berstest, er berstet	ich bürste	berste, birst	gebersten
to recollect	Besinnen (sich)	ich besinne, du besinnst, er besinnt	ich besann, du besannst, er besann	ich besänne od. besünne	besinne	besonnen
to possess	Besitzen	ich besitze, du besitzt, er besitzt	ich besaß, du besaßt, er besaß	ich besäße	besitze	beseßen
to deceive	Betrügen	ich betrüge, du betrügst, er betrügt	ich betrog, du betrogst, er betrog	ich betröge	betrüge	betrogen
to move	Bewegen	ich bewege, du bewegst, er bewegt	ich bewog, du bewogst, er bewog	ich bewöge	bewege	bewogen
to bend	Biegen	ich biege, du biegst, er biegt	ich bog, du bogst, er bog	ich böge	biege	gebogen
to offer	Bieten	ich biete, du bietest, er bietet	ich bot, du botst, er bot	ich böte	biere	geboten
to bind	Binden	ich binde, du bindest, er bindet	ich band, du bandst, er band	ich bände	binde	gebunden
to beg	Bitten	ich bitte, du bittest, er bittet	ich bat, du batst, er bat	ich bäte	itte	gebeten
to blow	Blasen	ich blase, du bläst, er bläst od. bläset	ich blies, du bliesst, er blies	ich bliese	blase	geblasen
to remain	Bleiben	ich bleibe, du bleibst, er bleibt	ich blieb, du bliebst, er blieb	ich bliebe	bleibe	geblieben
to bleach	Bleichen	ich bleiche, du bleichst, er bleicht	ich bleichte, du bleichst, er bleicht	ich bleiche	bleiche	gebleicht
to roast	Braten	ich brate, du bratest (brätst), er brät	ich bratete, du bratete (brätet), er brät	ich bratete od. bräte	brate od. brat	gebraten
to break	Breaken	ich breche, du brichst, er bricht	ich brach, du brachst, er brach	ich bräche	brich	gebrochen

to burn	Brennen	ich brenne, du brennst, er brennt	ich brennte	brenne	gebrannt
to bring	Bringen	ich bringe, du bringst, er bringt	ich brachte	bringe	gebracht
to think	Denken	ich denke, du denkst, er denkt	ich dachte	denke	gedacht
to hire	Wagen	ich miete, du mietest, er mietet	ich mietete	miete	gemietet
to thresh	Dreschen	ich dresche, du dreschest, er drescht	ich dreschte	dresche	gedroschen
to press	Dringen	ich dringe, du dringst, er dringt	ich drängte	dringe	gedrungen
to be permitted	Dürfen	ich darf, du darfst, er darf, wir dürfen	ich durfte	dürfe	gedurft
to receive	Empfangen	ich empfangen, du empfängst, er empfängt	ich empfing	empfangen	empfangen
to recommend	Empfehlen	ich empfehle, du empfehlst, er empfiehlt	ich empfahl	empfehle	empfohlen
to feel	Empfinden	ich empfinde, du empfindest, er empfindet	ich empfand	empfinde	empunden
to escape	Entrinnen		ich entrannte	entrannte	entronnen
to expire	Entschlafen	ich entschlafe, du entschliffst, er entschlief	ich entschlief	entschlafe	entschlafen
to answer	Entsprechen	ich entspreche, du entscheidest, er entscheidet	ich entschied	entspreche	entsprochen
to grow pale	Erbleichen	ich erbleiche, du erbleichst, er erbleicht	ich erblühte	erbleiche	erblüht

	Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Conjunctive.	Imperat.	Past participol.
to freeze	Erstieren	ich erstiere, du erstierst, er erstiert	ich erstor	ich erstöre	erriere	erstoren
to choose	Erwählen	ich erwähle, du erwählst, er erwählt	ich erster	ich erwöre	—	erworen
to become extinct	Erlöschen	ich erlösche, du erlöschst, er erloschet od. erloscht	ich erlosch	ich erlösche	erlösche, erlosch	erloschen
to be drowned	Ertrinken	ich ertrinke, du ertrinkst, er ertrinkt	ich erstoff	ich ertränke	erkaufe	ertrunken
to resound	Ererschallen	ich erschalle, du erschallst, er erschallt	ich erscholl	ich erschölle	erschalle	erschollen
to appear	Erscheinen	ich erscheine, du erscheinst, er erscheint	ich erschien	ich erschiene	erscheine	erschienen
to be frightened	Ererschrecken	ich erschrecke, du erschrickst, er erschrickt	ich erschraf	ich erschraße	erschrick	erschrocken
to be drowned	Ertrinken	ich ertrinke, du ertrinkst, er ertrinkt	ich ertranf	ich ertränke	ertrink	ertrunken
to consider	Erwägen	ich erwäge, du erwägst, er erwägt	ich ermog	ich erwöge	ermäge	ermogen
to eat	Essen	ich esse, du issest, er isset od. isst	ich aß	ich äße	iß	gegessen
to ride	Fahren	ich fahre, du fährst, er fährt	ich fuhr	ich führe	fahre	gefahren
to fall	Fallen	ich falle, du fällst, er fällt	ich fiel	ich fiele	falle	gefallen

to catch	Fangen	ich fange, du fängst, er fängt	ich fang	ich fänge ob. fänge	ich fange	gefangen
to fight	Kechten	ich fachte, du fichtst, er ficht	ich focht	ich föchte	schte, sich gefochten	
to find	Finden	ich finde, du findest, er findet	ich fand	ich fände	finde	gefunden
to twist	Glechten	ich fachte, du fichtest od. flichtst, er flicht	ich focht	ich föchte	flcht	geflachten
to fly	Fliegen	ich fliege, du fliegst, er fliegt	ich flog	ich flöge	fliege	geflogen
to flee	Fliehen	ich fliehe, du fliehst (fleuchst), er flieht (fleucht)	ich floh	ich flöhe	fliehe	geflohen
to flow	Fließen	ich fließe, du fließest, er fließt	ich floß	ich flöffe	fließe	geflossen
to ask	Kragen	du fragst, er fragt, or du fragst, er fragt	ich frug ob. fragte	ich früge ob. fragete	—	—
to devour	Kressen	ich fresse, du frisst, er frisst	ich fraß	ich frässe	friß	gefressen
to freeze	Krieren	ich friere, du frierst, er friert	ich froz	ich fröre	friere	gefroren
to ferment	Gähren	ich gähre, du gährst, er gährt	ich gohr	ich göhre	gähre	gegohren
to bring forth	Gebären	ich gebäre, du gebärst (gebierst), er gebiert	ich gear	ich gebäre ob. geböre	gebäre ob. gebier	geboren
to give	Geben	ich gebe, du giebst, er giebt	ich gab	ich gäbe	gieb	gegeben
to command	Gebieten	ich gebiete, du gebietest, er gebietet	ich gebot	ich geböte	gebiete	geboten
to prosper	Gedeihen	ich gedeihe, du gedeihst, er gedeiht	ich gedieh	ich gediehe	gedeihe	gediehen
to please	Gefallen	ich gefalle, du gefällst, er gefällt	ich gefiel	ich gefiele	gefalle	gefallen

	Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Imperfect of the Conjunctive.	Imperat.	Pass participle.
to go	gehen	ich gehe, du gehst, er geht	ich ging	ich ginge	gehe	gegangen
to succeed	gelingen	ich gelinge, du gelangst, er gelingt	ich gelang	ich gelänge	gelinge	gelingen
to be worth	gelten	ich gelte, du giltst, er gilt	ich galt	ich gälte	gelte	gegolten
to recover	genesen	ich genehe, du genehest, er genehet	ich genas	ich genähe	genehe	genesen
to enjoy	genießen	ich genieße, du genießest, er genießt	ich genoß	ich genösse	genieße ob.	genossen
to hit upon	gerathen	ich gerathe, du geräthst, er geräth	ich gerieth	ich geriethe	gerathe	gerathen
to happen	Geschehen	es geschieht	es geschähe	es geschähe	es geschehe	geschehen
to gain	Gewinnen	ich gewinne, du gewinnst, er gewinnt	ich gewann	ich gewönne	gewinne	gewonnen
to pour	Gießen	ich gieße, du gießest, er gießt	ich goß	ich gösse	gieße, gieß	gegossen
to resemble	Gleichen	ich gleiche, du gleichst, er gleicht	ich glich	ich gläche	gleiche	geglichen
to glide	Gleiten	ich gleite, du gleitest, er gleitet	ich glitt	ich glitte	gleite	geglichen
to glimmer	Glimmen	ich glüme, du glüfst, er glüht	ich glomm	ich glömm	glümme	geglommen
to dig	Graben	ich grabe, du gräbst, er gräbt	ich grub	ich grübe	grabe	gegraben
to grasp	Greifen	ich greife, du greifst, er greift	ich griff	ich griffe	greiff	gegriffen
to have	haben	ich habe, du hast, er hat	ich hatte	ich hätte	habe	gehabt
to hold	Halten	ich halte, du hältst, er hält	ich hielt	ich hielte	halte	gehalten
to hang	Hängen	ich hänge, du hängst, er hängt	ich hing	ich hänge	hänge	gehungen

to hew	Hauen	ich hieb	ich hieße	haue	gehauen
to heave	Heben	ich hob	ich hobbe	hebe	gehoben
to bid	Beissen	ich biess	ich biesse	beisse	gebeissen
to help	Helfen	ich half	ich hülf	hülfe	geholfen
to chide	Reissen	ich riss	ich risse	reisse o. reiß	gerissen
to know -	Rennen	ich kannte	ich kennete	kenne	gekannt
to cleave	Kleben	ich klob	ich klöbe	klieb	gekleben
to climb	Klimmen	ich klonn	ich klömme	klimme	geklimmen
to sound	Klingen	ich klang	ich klänge	klinge	geklingen
to pinch	Kneifen	ich kniff	ich kniffe	kneife	gkneiffen
to squeeze	Kneipen	ich knipp	ich knippe	kneipe	gekneipen
to come	Kommen	ich kam	ich käme	komme	gekommen
to be able	Können	ich konnte	ich könnte	könne	gekönnt
to creep	Kriechen	ich kroch	ich fröche	krieche	getrochen
to choose	Küren	ich for	ich före	füre	gefören
to load	Laden	ich lud	ich lüde	lade	geladen
to let	Lassen	ich ließ	ich ließe	lass o. lasse	gelassen
to run	Laufen	ich lief	ich liefe	laufe	gelaufen
to suffer	Leiden	ich litt	ich litte	leide	gelitten
to lend	Leihen	ich lieh	ich liehe	leihe	geliehen

	Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Conjunctive.	Imperat.	Past Participle.
to read	Lesen	ich lese, du liest, er liest liest	ich las	ich läse	lies	gelesen
to lie down	Liegen	ich liege, du liegst, er liegt	ich lag	ich läge	liege	gelegen
to lie	Lügen	ich lüge, du lügst, er lügt	ich log	ich löge	lüge	gelogen
to grind	Mahlen	ich male, du mahlst (mählst), er mahlt er mahlst (mählt)	ich mahlte (mahl)	ich mahlte (mählte)	mahle	gemahlen
to avoid	Meiden	ich meide, du meidest, er meidet	ich mied	ich miede	meide	gemieden
to milk	Melken	ich melke, du melkst ob. milchst, er melkt er melkt ob. milst	ich molk	ich mölke	melke ob. milst	gemolken
to measure	Messen	ich messe, du missest, er mißt.	ich maß	ich mäße	miß	gemessen
to displease	Missfallen	ich mißfalle, du mißfällst, er mißfällt mißfällt	ich mißfiel	ich mißfiere	mißfalle	mißfallen
to like	Mögen	ich mag, du magst, er mag	ich mochte	ich möchte	möge	gemocht
to be obliged	Müssen	ich muß, du mußt, er muß, wir müssen, ihr müßt, sie müssen	ich mußte	ich müßte		gemußt
to take	Nehmen	ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt	ich nahm	ich nähme	nimm	genommen
to name	Nennen	ich nenne, du nennst, er nennt	ich nannte	ich nennete	nenne ob. nenn	genannt
to whistle	Pfeifen	ich pfeife, pfeiffst, er pfeift	ich pfiß	ich pfiße	pfeife ob. pfeif	gepfeffen

to cherish	Pflegen	ich pflege, du pflegst, er pflegt	ich pflog	ich pfloge	pflege	gepflegen
to praise	Preisen	ich preise, du preisest, er preist	ich pries	ich priesse	preise	gepreisen
to sping forth	Quellen	ich quelle, du quillst, er quillt	ich quoll	ich quollte	quelle	gequollen
to avenge	Rächen	ich räche, du rächst, er rächt	ich rächte	ich rächete	räche	gerächt ob. gerochen
to advise	Rathen	ich rathe, du räthst, er rätb	ich rieth	ich riethe	rathe	gerathen
to rub	Reiben	ich reibe, du reibst, er reibt	ich rieb	ich riebe	reibe	gerieben
to tear	Reißen	ich reiße, du reißeest, er reißt	ich riß	ich riße	reiße	gerissen
to ride	Reiten	ich reite, du reitest, er reitet	ich ritt	ich ritte	reite	geritten
to run	Rennen	ich renne, du rennest, er rennt	ich rannte o. rennete	ich rennete	renne	gerannt ob. gerennt
to smell	Riechen	ich rieche, du riechst, er riecht	ich roch	ich röche	rieche ob. riech	gerochen
to wrestle	Ringen	ich ringe, du ringst, er ringt	ich rang	ich ränge	ringe	gerungen
to drop	Rinnen	ich rinne, du rinnst, er rinnt	ich rann	ich rönne	rinne	geronnen
to call	Rufen	ich rufe, du rufst, er ruft	ich rufte, rief ich	ich rief	rufe	gerufen
to salt	Salzen	ich salze, du salzeest, er salzt	ich salzte	ich salgete	salze	gesalzen
(vulgar) to drink	Saufen	ich saufe, du säufst, er säuft	ich soff	ich söffe	saufe ob. sauf	gesoffen
to suck	Saugen	ich sauge, du saugst, er saugt	ich saugte o. sog	ich söge	saug	gesogen
to suckle	Säugen	ich säuge, du säugst, er säugt	ich säugte	ich säugete	säuge	gesäugt

Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Conjunctive.	Imperativ.	Part participle.
to create to sound	ich schaffe, du schaffst, er schafft	ich schuf ich scholl schalte	ich schüfe ob. ich schölle ob. schälte	schaffe —	geschaffen
to separate	ich scheide, du scheidest, er scheidet	ich schied	ich schiede	scheide	geschieden
to shine to scold	ich scheine, du scheinst, er scheint ich schelte, du schillst, er schilt	ich schien ich schalt	ich schiene ich schölte ob. schälte	scheine schilt	geschienen gescholten
to shear to push	ich schere, du schierst, er schiert ich schiebe, du schiebst, er schiebt	ich schor ich schob	ich schöre ich schöbe	schier schiebe ob. geschoben	geschoren geschoben
to shoot	ich schieße, du schießest, er schießt	ich schoß	ich schöße	schieß	geschossen
to slay	ich schinde, du schindest, er schindet	ich schund	ich schünde	schinde	geschunden
to sleep	ich schlafe, du schläfst, er schläft	ich schlief	ich schliefe	schlase ob. geschlafen schlaf	geschlafen
to beat to speak	ich schlage, du schlägst, er schlägt ich schleiche, du schleichst, er schleicht	ich schlug ich schlich	ich schläge ich schliche	schlage schleiche	geschlagen geschlichen

to grind	schleifen	ich schleife, du schleiffst, er schleift, ich schliiff	ich schlisfe	schleife ob. schleif	geschliffen
to split	schleiffen	ich schleiffe, du schleiffest, er ich schliess	ich schlisfe	schleiffe ob. schleiß	geschliffen
to shut	schliesfen	ich schliesse, du schliessest, er ich schloß	ich schlosse	schliesse ob. schließ	geschlossen
to sling	schlingen	ich schlinge, du schlingst, er ich schlang	ich schlänge	schlinge	geschlungen
to throw	schmeiffen	ich schmeiffe, du schmeiffest, er ich schmiß	ich schmisfe	schmeiffe, schmeiß	geschmissen
to melt	schmelzen	ich schmelze, du schmelzest ob. ich schmolz schmilzt, er schmelzt oder schmilzt	ich schmolze	schmelze, schmilz	geschmolzen
to pant	schnauben		ich schnöbe, schnaubete	—	geschnoben, geschnaubt
to cut	schneiden	ich schneide, du schneidest, er ich schnitt	ich schnitte	schneide	geschnitten
to breathe	schnieben	ich schneide, du schneibst, er ich schnob	ich schnöbe	schniebe	geschnoben
to screw	schrauben	ich schraube, du schraubst, er ich schraubte schraubt	ich schraubete	schraube	geschroben, geschraubt
to write	schreiben	ich schreibe, du schreibst, er ich schrieb schreibt	ich schriebe	schreibe	geschrieben

Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative.		Imperfect of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Imperfect of the Conjunctive.	Imperat.	Past Participle.
to cry	Schreien	ich schreie, du schreiest, schreit	er ich schrie	ich schrie	schreie ob. schrei	geschrieben
to stride	Schreiten	ich schreite, du schreitest, schreitet	er ich schritt	ich schritte	schreite	geschritten
to foster	Schwären	ich schwäre, du schwärst, schwärt	er ich schwor	ich schwöre	schwäre	geschworen
to be silent	Schweigen	ich schweige, du schweigst, schweigt	er ich schwieg	ich schwiege	schweig	geschwiegen
to swell	Schwellen	ich schwellе, du schwülst, schwillt	er ich schwoll	ich schwölle	schwelle o. schwill	geschwollen
to swim	Schwimmen	ich schwimme, du schwimmst, schwimmt	er ich schwamm	ich schwämme	schwimme	geschwommen
to vanish	Schwinden	ich schwinde, du schwindest, schwindet	er ich schwand	ich schwände	schwinde	geschwunden
to swing	Schwingen	ich schwinge, du schwingst, schwingt	er ich schwang	ich schwänge	schwinge o. schwing	geschwungen
to swear	Schwören	ich schwöre, du schwörst, schwört	er ich schwur o. schwor	ich schwüre o. schwöre	schwöre	geschworen
to see	Sehen	ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht	ich sehe ob. sah	ich sähe	siehe ob. sieh	gesehen

to be	Sein	ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ich war, du warst o. was ihr seid, sie sind, conj. ich sei, warst o. was du seist, er sei, wir seien, ihr seid, sie seien	ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ich war, du warst o. was ihr seid, sie sind, conj. ich sei, warst o. was du seist, er sei, wir seien, ihr seid, sie seien	sei	gewesen
to send	Senden	ich sende, du sendest, er sendet	ich sandte	ich sendete	gesandt
to boil	Sieden	ich siebe, du siedest, er siedet	ich sott	ich sötze	gekottet
to sing	Singen	ich singe, du singest, er singt	ich sang	ich sänge	gesungen
to sink	Sinken	ich sinke, du sinkst, er sinkt	ich sank	ich sänte	gesunken
to think	Sinnen	ich sinne, du sinnst, er sinnt	ich sann	ich sänne ob. sönne	gesonnen
to sit	Sitzen	ich sitze, du sitzt, er sitzt o. sitzt o. sitzt o.	ich saß	ich säße	gesehen
to be oblig- ed	Sollen	ich soll, du sollst, er soll	ich sollte	ich sollte	gesollt
to split	Spalten	ich spalte, du spaltest od. spälst, er spaltet	ich spaltete	ich spaltete	gespalten
to spit	Speien	ich speie, du speiest od. speiest, er speit	ich spie	ich spie	gespieen
to spin	Spinnen	ich spinne, du spinnst, er spinnt	ich spann	ich spänne o. spönne	gesponnen
to cleave	Spalten	ich spalte, du spaltest od. spälst, er spaltet	ich spaltete	ich spaltete	gespalten
to speak	Spochen	ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht	ich sprach	ich spräche	gesprochen
to sprout	Sprießen	ich sprieße, du sprießest, er sprießt	ich sproß	ich spröße	gesprossen
to spring	Springen	ich springe, du springst, er springt	ich sprang	ich spränge	gesprungen

Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Conjunctive.	Imperat.	Past participle.
to sting	ich steche, du stichst, er sticht	ich stach	ich stäche	stich	gestochen
to stick	ich stecke, du steckst, er steckt	ich steck	ich stäcke	stecke	gesteckt
to stand	ich stehe, du stehest, er steht	ich stand	ich stände	stehe	gestanden
to steal	ich stehle, du stiehlest, er stiehlt	ich stahl	ich stähle ob. stöhle	stiehl	gestohlen
to ascend	ich steige, du steigst, er steigt	ich stieg	ich stiege	steig	gestiegen
to die	ich sterbe, du stirbst, er stirbt	ich starb	ich stärke ob. stürbe	stirb	gestorben
to scatter	ich stieße, du stiebst, er stießt	ich stob	ich stöbe	stieb	gestoben
to stink	ich stinke, du stinkst, er stinkt	ich stank	ich stänke	stinke	gestunken
to push	ich stoße, du stößest, er stößt	ich stieß	ich stieße	stoß ob. stöße	gestoßen
to stroke	ich streiche, du streichst, er streicht	ich strich	ich striche	streiche	gestrichen
to contend	ich streite, du streitest, er streitet	ich stritt	ich stritte	streite	gestritten
to do	ich thue, du thust, er thut	ich that	ich thäte	thue o. thu	gethan
to carry	ich trage, du trägst, er trägt	ich trug	ich trüge	trage	getragen
to hit	ich treffe, du triffst, er trifft	ich traf	ich träre	triff	getroffen
to drive	ich treibe, du treibst, er treibt	ich trieb	ich triebe	treibe	getrieben

to tread	Treten	ich trete, du trittst, er tritt	ich trat	ich träte	tritt	getreten
to trop	Triefen	ich triefe, du trieffst, er trieft	ich troff	ich tröffe	triefe	getroffen
to deceive	Triegen (Trügen)	ich triege, du triegst, er triegt	ich trog	ich tröge	triege ob. trüge	getrogen
to drink	Trinken	ich trinke, du trinkst, er trinkt	ich trank	ich tränke	trinf	getrunken
to conceal	Verbergen	ich verberge, du verbirgst, er verbirgt	ich verbarg	ich verbärge	verbirg	verborgen
to forbid	Verbieten	ich verbiete, du verbietest, er verbietet	ich verbot	ich verböte	verbiete	verboten
to remain	Verbleiben	ich verbleibe, du verbleibst, er verbleibt	ich verblieb	ich verbliebe	verbleibe	verblieben
to fade	Vergleichen	ich vergleiche, du vergleichst, er vergleicht	ich verglich	ich verbliche	verbleiche	verblichen
to perish	Verderben	ich verderbe, du verdirbst, er verdirbt	ich verdarb	ich verdärbe	verdirb	verdorben
to ostend	Verdrießen	es verdriest	es verdroß	ob. verbürbe		verdorssen
to forget	Vergessen	ich vergesse, du vergißest, er vergißt	ich vergaß	ich vergässe	vergiß	vergesen
to compare	Vergleichen	ich vergleiche, du vergleichst, er vergleicht	ich verglich	ich verbliche	verbleiche	verglichen
to conceal	Verhehlen	ich verhehle, du verhehlst, er verhehlt	ich verhehlte	ich verhehle	verhehle	verhehlet o. verhohlen

	Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative.	Imperfect of the Indicative	Imperfect of the Conjunctive.	Imperative.	Past Participle.
to leave	Verlassen	du verlässest, er verläßt	ich verließ	ich verliesse	—	verlassen
to lose	Verlieren	ich verlierest, du verlierst, er verliert	ich verlor	ich verlöre	verliere	verloren
to be extinguished	Verlöschen	ich verlösche, du verlöschest, ob.	ich verlösch	ich verlösche	verlösche ob.	verloschen
to avoid	Vermeiden	verlöschest, es verlischt	ich vermied	ich vermiede	vermeide	vermieden
to devour	Verschlun- gen	—	ich verschlang	ich verschlänge	verschlinge	verschlun- gen
to disappear	Verschwinnen	ich verschwindest, du verschwindest, er verschwindet	ich verschwand	ich verschwände	verschwinde	verschwun- den
to confound	Vermirren	ich verwirre, du verwirrst, er verwirrt	ich verwirrte	ich verwirrte	verwirre	verwirren
to forgive	Verzeihen	ich verzeihe, du verzeihst, er verzeiht	ob. vermoore ich vergieh	ich vergiehe	verzeihe	verziehen
to grow	Wachsen	ich wachse, du wachst, er wächst	ich wuchs	ich wüchse	wachse	wachsen
to weigh	Wägen ob.	ich wäge ob. wiege, du wägst, ich wiege	ich wog	ich möge	wäge ob.	gewogen
to wash	Waschen	ob. wiegst, er wäscht, ob. wiegt	ich wusch	ich wüsch	wäge	gewaschen
to weave	Weben	ich wasche, du waschest, er wascht	ich wusch	ich wüsch	wasche	gewoben
		—	ich webte	ich webte ob.	—	
				webte		

zu snow to turn	zuwenden Wenden	ich weisse, du weissest, er weisse ich wende, du wendest, er wendet	ich wies ich wandte	ich weile ich wendete	weile wende	geworfen gewandt ob. gewendet geworben
to enroll	Werben	ich werbe, du wirbst, er wirbt	ich warb	ich wärbe o. wärbe	wirb	geworben
to become	Werben	ich werde, du wirst, er wird	ich ward ob. wurde, du wurdest, er würde, wir würden ic.	ich würde würde	werde	geworden
to throw	Werfen	ich werfe, du wirfst, er wirft	ich warf	ich wärfe ob. würfe	wirf	geworfen
to weave	Weben	ich webe, du webst, er webt	ich web ob. webte	ich wäbe ob. webete	webe	gewebt
to wind	Winden	ich winde, du windest, er windet	ich wand	ich wände	winde	gewunden
to know	Wissen	ich weiß, du weisst, er weiß	ich wußte	ich wüßte	wisse	gewußt
to bewillig	Wollen	ich will, du willst, er will	ich wollte	ich wölte	wolle	gewollt
to accuse	Zeihen	ich zeihe, du zeihst, er ziehet	ich zieh	ich ziehe	ziehe	gezihen
to draw	Ziehen	ich ziehe, du ziehest, er zieht (du zeuchst, er zeucht)	ich zog	ich zöge	ziehe, zieh ob. zeuch	gezogen
to force	Zwingen	ich zwinge, du zwingst, er zwingt	ich zwang	ich zwänge	zwinge	gezwungen

Several irregular neuter verbs receive by changing their radical vowel in the infinitive an active signification, in which case they lose their irregular form. For instance: bringen—drängen; ersaufen—ersäufen; fallen—fällen; hangen—hängen; liegen—legen; saugen—säugen; springen—sprengen; schwimmen—schwemmen; sinken—senken; sitzen—setzen; trinken—tränken.

Of participles.

The participle which is represented by the most part of grammarians as a peculiar part of speech, is properly but a part of verb, being derived from it and also serving him for the formation of the compound tenses. For the rest it may be considered as an adjective, that retains the signification of the verb from which it is derived. Because then it belongs on account of its origin to the verb, but on account of its nature to the noun, therefore participates of both, it has received the appellation of participle (*Mittelwort*).

The participle distinguishes itself from the adjective by indicating, besides the quality it expresses, at the same time a relation of time.

The Germans have two participles, as we have already observed, the *present* and the *past* (*das Mittelwort der gegenwärtigen und der vergangenen Zeit*). The first commonly used like an absolute, or constructed adjective, so that it has no regimen. For instance; infinitive, beleidigen, to offend; present participle, beleidigend, offending; seine Worte sind sehr beleidigend; beleidigende Worte.

When the present participle performs in English the functions of the verb, it is expressed in the German by a circumlocution, in which the following conjunctions are

used: und, als, da, indem, nachdem, weil. Examples: he smiled seeming to applaud my resolution, er lächelte, und schien meinen Entschluß zu billigen; his father seeing him, was surprized, als ihn sein Vater sah, erstaunte er; his mother hearing this, grew angry, da seine Mutter dieses hörte, wurde sie ungehalten; relying upon her word, I was deceived, indem ich mich auf ihr Wort verließ, wurde ich betrogen; having supped, we went a walking, nachdem wir zu Abend gegessen hatten, gingen wir spazieren; being disliked by them, he was rejected, weil er ihnen nicht anstand, so wurde er verworfen.

The following English phrases, in which the present participle occurs, are not expressed in German, as in English, by a circumlocution: I am coming, ich komme; he is writing, er schreibt; she was playing, when I came in, sie spielte, als ich hinein kam; whither are you going? wo gehen Sie hin? we have been speaking of it a great while, wir haben lange davon geredet; I shall be travelling at that time, ich werde zu dieser Zeit reisen.

After a substantive the present participle has in English a relative signification; as: a rascal cursing and swearing all the day; a man travelling to England. In this case they say in German as in English, or they use a circumlocution: ein den ganzen Tag fluchender und schwörender Bösewicht, or, ein Bösewicht, der den ganzen Tag flucht und schwört; ein nach England reisender Mann, or, ein Mann, der nach England reiset.

When the present participle in English has no regimen, and is quite detached from all the other parts of the phrase; it is also rendered by the present participle in German. For instance: she left the room singing, sie verließ das Zimmer singend. For the rest it is to be observed, that the use of the present participle is now more frequent in Ger-

man than formerly. For instance: als seine Neugierde befriedigt war, ging er, ihr eine gute Nacht wünschend, nach Hause, his curiosity being satisfied, he went home, wishing her a good night. Instead of the infinitive the present participle is often used in English; but in German the infinitive is only employed in this case. For instance: I saw them dancing, ich sah sie tanzen; leave off quarrelling, hören Sie auf zu zanken; go on speaking, fahren Sie fort zu reden.

The past participle serves to form the compound tenses of verbs. When it is placed with a substantive, it is used either like an absolute, or like a constructed adjective. Examples: ich hatte das Vergnügen, das Laster bestraft und die Tugend belohnt zu sehen; aber es war nur in einem Lustspiele, I had the pleasure of seeing vice punished and virtue rewarded; but it was only in a comedy; ein gedruckter Brief, a printed letter: eine geliebte Tochter, a beloved daughter; ein gewaschenes Hemd, a washed shirt. The past participle is also often used like an interjection: gewonnen! won! verloren! lost! It is likewise sometimes employed instead of the imperative and infinitive: das Maul gehalten! geschwiegen! hold your tongue! das heißt gelogen (instead of lügen), that is called a lie.

Rules on the construction of phrases.

I. Where there is no rule for a particular construction given, the same construction is followed in German as in English.

II. The infinitive and the participle of the past in the compound tenses are placed at the end of the phrase in common constructions. Examples: ich bin Willens,

deutsch zu lernen, I have a mind to learn German ; hab Sie das Buch gelesen, welches ich Ihnen schickte ? have you read the book I sent you ? This is also the case with the compound tenses formed by the help of the infinitive. For instance : ich werde meine Bücher verkaufen, I will sell my books ; wenn ich reich wäre, so würde ich Freunde haben, if I were rich, I should have friends. But this rule does not take place, when the relative pronoun welcher or der, or a conjunction occurs in the phrase ; as : die Frau, welche Sie gesehen haben, the woman whom you have seen ; nachdem ich seine Rückkunft erfahren hatte etc., having heard of his return, etc. The past participle is also not placed at the end of the phrase in the relative future and in the conditional past. Examples : wenn ich werde mit Ihnen englisch gesprochen haben etc. ; ich würde schon längst Ihren Rath befolgt haben etc.

III. The particle *to*, preceding the verb, is rendered in German by *zu*, and always placed before its infinitive : mit Ihnen zu reden, kam ich hierher, to speak to you, I came hither ; ich erühne mich, Ihnen meine Aufwartung zu machen, I make bold to wait upon you ; dieser Verlust ist zu ertragen, this loss is to be suffered.

IV. The particle *in order to* is rendered in German by *um zu*. If the infinitive in English be followed by some words which it governs, the particle *um* is put before these words, and then *zu* is placed before the infinitive, which maintains its usual station at the end of the phrase. Examples : er that Alles, was er konnte, um mich zu Grunde zu richten, he did all he could in order to ruin me ; er ging, um sein Geld zu bekommen, he went in order to get his money ; um verstanden zu werden, müssen wir die angemessensten Ausdrücke zu einer Sache wählen. to be

understood we must chose the most proper terms of a thing.

V. The partiele *without* before the verb is expressed by *ohne zu*. The preceding rule takes also place here. For instance : *er reisete gestern von London ab, ohne von seinen Freunden Abschied zu nehmen*, he set yesterday from London, without taking leave of his friends.

VI. The verb must be placed in the number in which the substantive stands : *die Tugend veraltet niemals*, virtue never grows old ; *einige Guineen werden ihn zum Schweigen bringen*, some guineas will still him.

VII. When the verb relates to more substantives, it stands in the plural ; as : *Güte und Größe sind sinnverwandte Ausdrücke*, goodness and greatness are synonymous terms.

VIII. When the verb relates to more persons, the first person is preferred to the second, and the second to the third : *ich und ich waren zu Hause*, you and I were at home ; *du und er thatet es*, thou and he did it.

IX. When we employ the relative pronoun in order to give more energy to our words, the verb always stands in the third person : *ich bin es, der mit Ihnen spricht*, it is I that speaks to you.

X. The subject or nominative commonly goes before its verb, as in English : *der Sohn ist größer als der Vater*, the son is taller than the father.

XI. When the phrase is interrogative, the verb is placed before the nominative : *wann treten Sie Ihre Reise nach England an ?* when do you set out for England ?

XII. It is the same with the phrases where there is an exclamation: *wie froh bin ich!* how glad I am! *wie sehr liebe ich sie!* how much I love her!

XIII. The same rule takes place after verbs governed by the following conjunctions and adverbs: *daher*, *doch*, *endlich*, *ferner*, *indessen*, *dann*, *jedoch*, *hingegen*, *im Gegentheile*, *nichts desto weniger*, *übrigens*, *zuerst* etc. For instance: *daher können Sie mir glauben*, wherefore you may believe me; *endlich muß ich noch bemerken*, finally I must yet observe; *ferner muß ich Ihnen sagen*, moreover I must tell you; *hingegen hatte er*, on the contrary he had; *übrigens versichere ich Sie*, for the rest I assure you; *zuerst müssen Sie wissen*, first you must know. However it is to be observed, that the mentioned conjunctions and adverbs also may be placed after the verb, and that in this case the subject or nominative is put before the verb.

XIV. The subject must likewise be placed after the verb in that part which terminates compound phrases or a period: *wenn Sie zur rechten Zeit kommen*, so wollen wir *zusammengehen*, if you come in good time, we will go together; *wenn ich reich wäre*, so würde ich *glücklicher seyn*, if I were rich, I should be happier. These phrases may also be expressed thus: *wir wollen zusammengehen*, wenn etc.; *ich würde glücklicher seyn*, wenn etc. In this case the given rule does not take place.

XV. The verb must also go before the nominative, when the conjunction *wenn*, if, is omitted: *wäre ich weiser gewesen*, if I had been wiser, instead of *wenn ich weiser gewesen wäre*. When the conjunction *daß*, that, is omitted, the nominative goes before its verb: *ich hoffe*, Sie werden mit Ihrer Reimwand *zufrieden seyn*, I hope, that you will

be content with your linen, instead of *ich hoffe, daß Sie mit Ihrer Leinwand zufrieden seyn werden.*

XVI. The same rule is observed in all the phrases which admit of an inversion, that is, where the natural order is departed from. Examples: *es ist ein Eilbote angekommen*, there is a messenger arrived, instead of *ein Eilbote ist angekommen*; *morgen wird er kommen*, he will come to morrow, instead of *er wird morgen kommen*.

XVII. When two infinitives accompany one another, the principal one which describes the action, is placed first in German: *ich möchte gern spazieren gehen*, I should be glad to take a walk. The participle is placed before the infinitive: *gehabt haben*, to have had.

XVIII. The participle of negation *nicht*, not, is placed after the verb, and in compound tenses before the participle and infinitive: *ich bin nicht reich*, I am not rich; *ich habe nicht gesprochen*, I have not spoken; *ich werde nicht davon sprechen*, I shall not speak of it. If there be a personal pronoun after the verb, it comes before the negation: *habe ich nicht?* have not I? The words which the verb governs, are placed, in common constructions, after it, and before the particle *nicht*: *sie sandte mir ihr Schreiben nicht*, she sent me not your letter. As for the negative particle *nie* or *niemals*, never, they say: *ich habe nie Ihre Schwester gesehen*, or, *ich habe Ihre Schwester nie gesehen*, I never have seen your sister. *Not yet* is rendered in German by *noch nicht*: *ich bin noch nicht bereit*, I am not yet ready.

XIX. When the personal pronouns are not in the nominative, they are placed before their verb: *mein Freund, welcher mir diesen Brief schrieb*, my friend who wrote me

this letter ; meine Mutter, welche ihn sah, my mother who saw him.

Rules relative to the use of the tenses.

I. The present is often used instead of the future, as in English : morgen gehe ich nach Berlin, to morrow I go to Berlin. This tense is also often employed in telling past things instead of the imperfect : ich trete in die Hütte einer armen Frau. Bei meinem Eintritte scheint ein Strahl von Freude ihre Augen zu erhellen, I enter the cottage of a poor woman. On my entrance a ray of joy seems to illumine her eyes.

II. When we speak of an event at which we have been present ourselves, or which we have been nearer than another, whom it is told, the imperfect is used in German. Therefore the historical style makes use of it, because the historian tells past things thus, as if he had been present at them. But if we have not been present at an event, the perfect is used. When the question is of a thing past which happened but some time or some hours ago, the perfect is likewise employed : ich habe ihn vor vierzehn Tagen gesehen, I saw him a fortnight ago ; er ist vor einem Jahre gestorben, he died a twelvemonth ago ; sie hat das Land vor einem Vierteljahre verlassen, she left the country three months since ; ich bin in der Kirche gewesen, I have been at church ; haben Sie schon zu Mittage gespeiset ? have you dined already ?

III. The imperfect of the subjunctive is often used in German instead of the conditional present : wenn ich reich wäre, so hätte ich Freunde, if I were rich, I should have friends, instead of so würde ich Freunde haben. The plu-

perfect and future are used in German, as in English. The latter tense is not employed after a conjunction, when there is yet a future in the second part of the phrase : wenn ich Ihnen sage, daß ich diese Stadt ungern verlasse ; so werden Sie mich vielleicht der Heuchelei beschuldigen, when I tell you that I leave this town with regret, perhaps you will accuse me of hypocrisy, instead of wenn ich Ihnen sagen werde etc. The pluperfect of the subjunctive is often employed instead of the conditional past : ich hätte ihn bezahlt, wenn er da gewesen wäre, I had paid him, had he been there, instead of ich würde ihn bezahlt haben.

IV. Instead of the relative future the perfect is often used in German, as in English : wenn ich die Uhr gesehen habe, when I (shall) have seen the watch, instead of wenn ich die Uhr werde gesehen haben.

V. When in German proverbs a condition is found, it is expressed in English by the imperative : erlaubt man ihm einen Zoll, so nimmt er sich eine Elle, give him an inch and he will take an ell ; wenn man einen Wurm tritt, so krümmt er sich, tread on a worm and it will turn.

The word *let* which is placed in English in the imperative before *me, us, him* and *them*, must often be expressed in German by *mögen, müssen, wollen*, and sometimes by *wenn, man*, etc. : let me say what I will, ich mag sagen was ich will ; let them be never so wise, sie mögen noch so weise seyn ; let the wicked fall into their own nets, die Gottlosen müssen in ihre eigenen Netze fallen ; let us speak English, wir wollen englisch sprechen ; let him but have his liberty and he will etc., wenn er nur erst seine Freiheit hat, or man lasse ihm nur erst seine Freiheit, so wird er etc.

For the rest the imperative is used in German, as in

English: *stoßet ihn hinaus*, push him out; *kommt nur*, do but come; *betrügen Sie sich nicht*, don't deceive yourself; *läugnen Sie es nicht*, don't deny it; *reden Sie nicht so*, don't talk so.

VI. The verbs *helfen*, *lehren*, *lernen*, *heißen*, when it signifies *to bid*, *to order*, omit the particle *zu* before the infinitive that accompanies them: *er hilft mir arbeiten*, he assists me in working; *er hat meine Kinder lesen gelehrt*, he has taught my children to read; *er lernt schreiben*, he learns to write; *ich hieß ihn hereinkommen*, I bade him come in.

VII. The verbs *dürfen*, *helfen*, *hören*, *können*, *lassen*, *lernen*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sehen*, *sollen*, *wollen* use the infinitive instead of the past participle, whenever they are accompanied by another verb in the infinitive. Examples: *ich habe sie singen hören*, I heard her sing; *ich hätte eher kommen können*, I might have been able to come sooner; *wir haben sie tanzen sehen*, we saw them dance.

VIII. The infinitive of the active is used in German; where that of the passive is preferred in English: *diese Dinge sind nicht zu loben*, these things are not to be praised; *die Gesundheit ist nicht mit Geld zu bezahlen*, health is not to be paid with money; *er ist zu tadeln*, he is to be blamed.

IX. All the infinitives of the German language may be employed like substantives: *das Essen*, *das Trinken*, *das Tanzen* etc.

X. In order to express a doubt or a wish, the subjunctive is used: *man sagt, daß ein Seetreffen gewesen sey*, they say there has been a sea-sight; *er fragte mich, warum sie nicht gekommen wäre*, he asked me, why she was not come; *ich hoffe, daß er sein Versprechen halten werde*, I hope he will keep his promise; *man hat mir gesagt, daß*

er nichts als Lustspiele schreibe, I am told he writes nothing but comedies ; es ist nichts so lächerlich, welches nicht schon von einem Philosophen gesagt worden wäre, there is nothing so ridiculous that has not been said already by some philosopher ; es wäre zu wünschen, daß wir viele Werke dieser Art hätten, it were to be wished we had many performances of this kind ; ich wünsche, daß Sie alle glücklich seyen or seyn mögen, I wish you all happy ; Gott gebe, daß es wahr sey, God grant (that) it may be true ; ein solcher Gedanke müsse Ihnen nie eintfallen, may a thought like that never enter your mind.

XI. The English passive must often be rendered in German by the active : I have been told, man hat mir gesagt ; I have been advised, man hat mir gerathen ; I was shown her picture, man zeigte mir ihr Bildniß ; he was followed by his servants, seine Bedienten folgten ihm nach ; if he may be believed, wenn man ihm glauben kann ; you were much talked of, man sprach viel von Ihnen. The English passive is also sometimes resolved in German by daß : our being deceived may be a warning to others, daß wir betrogen werden, kann Andern eine Warnung seyn.

Of the government of verbs.

When the verb is connected with a substantive, the verb is either governed by the substantive, or the substantive by the verb. In the first case, the verb commonly is in the infinitive with the particle zu : die Hoffnung Sie zu sehen, the hope of seeing you ; ich kann seine Art zu denken nicht billigen, I cannot approve of his way of thinking. In the latter case, the substantive is either in the nominative, or in the genitive, or in the dative, or in the accusative, according as the verb requires one of these cases. If the active

governs the accusative, the passive governs the nominative. Thus they say : *das Kind wird geliebt*, the child is loved, because they say in the active : *ich liebe das Kind*, I love the child. If the active verb governs the dative, it remains also in the passive : *ich glaube Ihnen* ; *aber mir wird nicht geglaubt*, I believe you, but I am not believed.

Some active verbs have the genitive of the object after them ; as : *bedürfen*, *berauben*, *entlassen*, *gedenken*, *harrren*, *überführen*, *würdigen*, etc. For instance : *eines Arztes bedürfen*, to need a physician ; *er wollte mich dieses Vergnügens berauben*, he intended to rob me of this pleasure, etc.

Several verbs govern the genitive and accusative, such as *entbehren*, *erwähnen*, *schonen*, etc. For instance : *er erwähnte Ihres Namens* or *Ihren Namen*, he mentioned your name.

Some reflected verbs take the genitive after them, such as *sich eines Dinges bedienen*, to prevail one's self of something ; *sich eines Dinges befleißigen*, to apply to something ; *sich eines Dinges begeben*, to resign something ; *sich eines Dinges bemächtigen*, to master something ; *sich eines Dinges enthalten*, to abstain from something ; *sich Jemandes erbarmen*, to take pity on somebody ; *sich eines Dinges freuen*, to rejoice at something ; *sich eines Dinges rühmen*, to boast of something ; *sich eines Dinges schämen*, to be ashamed of something, etc. However some of these verbs take also a preposition after them : *er erbarmt sich über mich* ; *er erinnert sich an meinen Bruder* ; *er freuet sich über sein Glück*.

The greatest part of the neuter verbs governs the dative, such as *einem angehören*, to belong to somebody ; *einem anliegen*, *etwas zu thun*, to press somebody to do some-

thing; einem ausweichen, to avoid somebody; einem begegnen, to meet somebody; einem beistehen, to assist somebody; einem für etwas danken, to thank somebody for something; einem dienen, to serve somebody; einem mit etwas drohen, to threaten somebody with something; dem Tode entgehen, to escape from death; einem fluchen, to curse somebody; einem folgen, to follow somebody; einem an die Hand gehen, to assist somebody; einem glauben, to believe somebody; einem helfen, to relieve somebody; einem leuchten, to light somebody, to shine upon somebody; einem lohnen, to reward somebody; einem (or einen) nachahmen, to imitate somebody; einem Dinge obliegen, to ply something; einem rathen, to advise somebody; einem schmeicheln, to flatter somebody; einem Troß bieten, to defy somebody; einem versichern, to assure somebody; einem zuhören, to listen to somebody; den Spielen zusehen, to be a spectator of the games, etc. As for the verb versichern, they say: ich versichere es Ihnen, and ich versichere Sie meiner Freundschaft.

Many impersonal verbs have the dative after them, such as es kommt mir eine Lust an, I have a mind; es wässert mir der Mund, my mouth waters; es ahnet, behagt, gebricht, gebührt, gelingt, genügt, geziemt, gilt, grauet, mangelt, schaudert, scheint, schwindelt, träumt. etc. As for gelten, the dative of the person is commonly omitted, and only put the accusative of the object; es gilt sein Leben, his life is concerned, instead of es gilt ihm das Leben.

All the active verbs which take in the passive the nominative after them, require the accusative. I must therefore say: ich lobe meinen Sohn, I praise my son, because I say in the passive: mein Sohn wird gelobt, my son is praised.

When the syllable *be* is affixed to neuter verbs, they are changed by it into active or reflected verbs, and govern the accusative ; as : *ich folge Ihnen*, I follow you ; *ich befolge Ihren Rath*, I follow your advice ; *Sie lohnen mir für meine guten Dienste schlecht*, you reward me ill for my good services ; *Gott belohnt die Guten*, God rewards the good ; *er dient einem guten Herrn*, he serves a good master ; *er bediente mich*, he waited on me ; *er drohete ihm*, or *er bedrohete ihn mit dem Tode*, he threatened him with death, etc. Some verbs deviate from the given rule. Thus *berichten*, to report, requires the dative : *ich kann Ihnen nun berichten, wie die Sache war*, I can now report to you how the matter was. As for the verb *lohn*, it has also an active signification, and then it governs the dative of the person and the accusative of the object : *der Himmel lohne es Ihnen !* heaven reward you for it !

*Spiele*n, to play, takes the accusative with its article, when they speak of a musical instrument : *ich höre, Sie spielen das Clavier*, I hear you play upon the harpsichord ; *die Orgel spielen*, to play upon the organ. This verb is also a neuter one, and then they say in German, as in English, *auf dem Claviere, der Orgel spielen*. When a play is mentioned, the substantive is named without its article : *Billiard spielen*, to play at billiards ; *Karten (or in der Karten) spielen*, to play at cards.

The most part of the reflected verbs govern the accusative : *ich beklage mich, ich besinne mich*, etc. Several verbs are excepted : *ich bilde mir ein, ich getraue mir, ich stelle mir vor*, etc.

Those reflected verbs, which may take instead of the pronoun another substantive, have, if they govern the accu-

sative or in the nominative, according as the sense requires, it. For instance : *er zeigt sich als einen großen Mann*, he shews himself as a great man, that is to say, he acts really greatly, nobly. But when I say : *er zeigt sich als ein grosser Mann muthig in den größten Gefahren*, the meaning of these words is : as he is a great man, he shews himself courageous in the greatest dangers.

Many impersonal verbs the signification of which is more active than passive, take the accusative, such as *es ärgert, befällt, befremdet, bekümmert, betrifft, betrübt, dünkt* or *dünkt, dauert, durstet, ergötzt, freuet, friert, gelüstet, gereuet, hungert, jammert, kränket, schläfert, schmerzet, schmilzt, sticht, verbrießt, verlangt, wundert mich, es geht mich an, es ficht mich an*.

Those verbs which have in the passive a double nominative, put in the active the person and the matter in the accusative, such as *heissen, nennen, schelten, schimpfen, lehren*. Also *fragen* has in certain cases a double accusative. As for *lehren*, it is more correct to say : *er wird Ihnen diese Wissenschaft lehren*, he will teach you that science, than *er wird Sie diese Wissenschaft lehren*, because I cannot say in the passive : *er wird diese Wissenschaft gelehrt*, but *ihm wird diese Wissenschaft gelehrt*. But when *lehren* is only employed with the person, this person must be placed in the accusative : *er lehret mich*, he teaches me. *Dieses Buch kostet mir drei Thaler*, this book costs me three dollars, is likewise more correct than *dieses Buch kostet mich drei Thaler*.

On the question : *wie viel ?* how much ? *wie lange ist es ?* how long is it ? *wie alt sind sie ?* how old are you ?

etc. the answer is put in the accusative. Examples : es wog ein Pfund, it weighed one pound ; sie lebten einige Jahre glücklich mit einander, they lived happily together for some years ; ich bin vierzig Jahre alt, I am forty years old.

When the verb *lassen* has an infinitive after it, the accusative and dative may be put, according as the sense requires one of these cases. For instance : er ließ mich nicht meine Meinung sagen, he suffered me not to tell my opinion ; er ließ mir sagen, daß er mich zu sprechen wünschte, he sent me word that he wished to speak to me. But I cannot say : ich lasse Ihnen meinen Verdruß merken ; ich lasse Ihnen die Sache betreiben ; but ich lasse Sie meinen Verdruß merken, etc.

Finally I shall yet give some rules of the dative and accusative which verbs requires.

I. In order to know, which of the two named cases must be joined to an active verb, the active must be changed into the passive. If the passive governs the nominative, the active takes the accusative. But if the passive puts not the person in the nominative, but in the dative, the active has also the dative after it.

II. When a verb has not only its object after it, but also the peculiar part of the object, towards which the action is directed, with a preposition is added, that object may be placed now in the dative, now in the accusative.

We must put the object in the dative, if the verb without its initial syllable, which is a preposition, has the signification of a neuter verb and does not permit the addition of an accusative. Thus *ansprechen* is an active verb ;

but it grows a neuter one, when I take the initial syllable or the preposition *an* from it, and therefore we must say : *er spie mir ins Gesicht*, he spit upon my face. It is the same with the verbs *brennen*, *blasen*, *hauchen*, *gaffen*, *sehen*. For as these verbs are neuter ones, we must also say : *es brennt mir im Leibe* ; *er blies mir ins Gesicht* ; *er hauchte mir vor die Stirn* ; *er gaffte mir ins Gesicht* ; *er sah mir in die Augen*.

If a neuter verb does not need the addition of an initial syllable, by which it should receive an active signification it must take the dative. For instance : *es brauset mir im Kopfe* ; *er raunte mir ins Ohr* ; *es juckt mir die Haut*. Several exceptions take here place. Thus they say : *es sticht mich in der Seite*, *die Milz sticht mich*.

The object must be put in the accusative, if the verb, without taking an initial syllable, in itself already has an active signification, and by adding an accusative gives a full sense. As the verbs *klopfen*, *schlagen*, *treten*, *verwunden*, *werfen* have an active signification, and therefore need no additional syllable, but by adding an accusative may be understood, we must say : *er klopfte mich auf die Finger* ; *er schlug mich auf den Kopf* ; *er stieß mich ans Bein* ; *er verwundete mich in den Kopf*.

Exercises on all kinds of verbs.

The execution of Mary queen of Scotland.

The earls of Shrewsbury and Kent, being introduced to Mary, told her to prepare for death next morning at eight o'clock. She seemed not terrified, though somewhat surprized, with the intelligence. She said with a cheerful countenance, that she did not think the queen, her sister,

The execution, die Hinrichtung, 4.

Mary, Maria.

the queen, die Königin, 4.

of, von.

Scotland, Schottland.

the earl, der Graf, 3.

being introduced must be resolved in German by the relative pronoun welcher and the imperfect of the passive. To introduce, hinein führen.

to, zur (instead of zu der).

to tell, sagen.

to prepare, daß sie sich vorbereiten sollte. Vorbereiten sollte must be placed at the end of the phrase.

next morning, der nächste

Morgen, 1. The accusative must be put.

for death, auf ihren Tod.

to seem, scheinen.

with, über, with the accusative.

the intelligence, die Nachricht, 4.

terrified, erschrocken.

though, obwohl.

somewhat, etwas, ein wenig.

surprized, verwundert. The words zu seyn (to be) must be added in German.

to say, sagen.

with, mit, with the dative.

cheerful, heiter.

the countenance, die Miene, 4.

that, daß

did not think must be ren-

would have consented to her death, or have executed the sentence against a person who was not subject to the laws and jurisdiction of England. " But as such is her will, said she, death, which puts an end to all my miseries, shall be to me most welcome; nor can I esteem that soul worthy the felicities of heaven, which cannot support the body

dered in German by the subjunctive of the pluperfect. To think, glauben. The verb to do which is frequently put in English before another verb, is not expressed in German. I do think must therefore be rendered by ich glaube. The conjunction daß must be added in German before the words the queen.

would have consented, and have executed must be rendered in German by the conditional present.

To consent to . . . , einwilligen in . . .

to execute, vollstrecken.

the sentence, das Urtheil, 2. against, gegen, with the accusative.

the person, die Person, 4. subject, unterworfen.

the law, das Gesetz, 2.

the jurisdiction, die Gerichtsbarkeit, 4.

was is rendered in German by the subjunctive of the imperfect.

but as such, allein da dieses. the will, der Wille, 3.

death, der Tod, 2. In German the article cannot be omitted.

the misery, das Leiden, 3. to put an end, ein Ende machen.

most welcome, höchst willkommen.

nor can I, auch kann ich nicht.

that soul, diejenige or die Seele.

worthy, für werth. Werth governs the genitive.

the felicities, die Glückseligkeit, 4.

heaven, der Himmel, 1.

esteem, halten.

the body, der Körper, 1.

under the horrors of the last passage to these blissful mansions." She then requested the two noblemen, that they would permit some of her servants, and particularly her confessor, to attend her: but they told her, that compliance with this last demand was contrary to their conscience, and that Dr. Fletcher, dean of Peterborough, a man of great

under, unter, with the dative.

the horrors, das Grausen, 1.

last, letzte.

the passage, der Uebergang;
2.

to, zu, with the dative.

blissful, selig.

the mansion, die Wohnung,

4.

cannot support, nicht aufrecht halten kann.

to request, bitten.

then, hierauf.

the two noblemen, die beiden Herren.

some, einige.

the servant, der Diener, 1.

particularly, vornehmlich.

the confessor, der Beichtvater, 1:

to permit, erlauben, with the dative.

would, möchten. The verbs

bitten, ermahnen, wünschen govern the subjunctive, which is formed after them by the help of the verb mögen.

to attend her, bei ihr zugegen seyn.

compliance, die Willfah-
rung, 4.

the demand, die Bitte, 4. In

German this word must be put in the genitive, without adding a preposition.

contrary, gegen, with the accusative.

the conscience, das Gewissen, 1.

was must be rendered by the subjunctive of the imperfect.

dean Dechant.

a man, ein Mann, 5.

of, von, with the dative.

learning, should be present, to instruct her in the principles of true religion. Her refusal to have any conference with this divine, inflamed the earl of Kent's zeal; and he bluntly told her, that her death would be the life of their religion; as on the contrary her life would have been the death of it. Mention being made of Babington, she constantly denied his conspiracy to have been at all known to her; and the

the learning, die Gelehrsam-
keit, 4.

present, gegenwärtig.

to instruct, um zu unterrich-
ten.

the principle, der Grund-
satz, 2.

true, wahr.

the religion, die Religion,
4.

the refusal, die Weigerung,
4.

the divine, der Gottesge-
lehrte, 3.

any, irgend ein, ein.

the conference, die Unter-
redung, 4.

to inflame, erhitzen.

the earl of Kent's zeal, den
Eifer des Grafen von
Kent.

bluntly, auf eine plumpe
Art.

the life, das Leben, 1.

as, so wie.

on the contrary, hingegen.
of it, derselben.

to make mention of some-
thing, eines Dinges Er-
wähnung thun, etwas er-
wähnen. Mention being
made must be resolved in
German by the conjunc-
tion da and the imper-
fect.

to deny, läugnen.

constantly, beständig, stets.

The conjunction daß must
be added in German.

the conspiracy, die Ver-
schwörung, 4.

at all, im geringsten.

known, bekannt

to have been must be rend-
ered in German by the
subjunctive of the pluper-
fect.

revenge of her wrong she resigned into the hands of the Almighty. When the earls had left her, she ordered supper to be hastened, that she might have the more leisure to finish the few affairs, which remained to her in this world, and to prepare for her passage to another. It was necessary for her, she said, to take some sustenance, lest a failure of her bodily strength should depress her spirits on the morrow, and lest her behaviour should thereby be-

the revenge, die Rächung,

4.

the wrong, das Unrecht, 2.

to resign, niederlegen.

the Almighty, der Allmächtige, 3.

when, als.

to leave, verlassen.

to order, befehlen.

supper to be hastened, daß

das Abendessen beschleunigt werden sollte.

that, damit, with the subjunctive.

the more leisure, um so mehr

Muße, Zeit.

to may, mögen.

few, wenige.

the affair, das Geschäft, 2.

to finish, zu beendigen.

the world, die Welt, 2.

to remain, übrig bleiben.

another, eine andere.

it was must be rendered in German by the subjunctive of the imperfect.

necessary, nothwendig.

for, für, with the accusative.

some sustenance, einige

Nahrung, Speise,

to take, zu nehmen.

lest, damit nicht.

the failure, der Mangel, 1.

bodily, körperlich.

the strength, die Kraft, die Kräfte.

the spirits, der Muth.

to depress, niederdrücken.

on, an, with the dative.

the morrow, der Morgen, 1.

the behaviour, das Benehmen, 1.

thereby, dabei.

- tray a weakness unworthy of herself. She supped sparingly, as her manner usually was; and her wonted chearfulness did not even desert her on this occasion. She comforted her servants under the affliction which overwhelmed them, and which was too powerful for them to conceal from her. Turning to Burgoin, her physician, she asked him, whether he did not remark the great and invincible force of truth. "They pretend, said she, that I must die, because I conspired against the queen's life: but the earl of Kent avowed,

the weakness, die Schwäche,

4.

unworthy, unwürdig, with
the genitive.

to betray, verrathen.

to sup, zu Abend essen.

sparingly, mäßig.

as, so wie es,

the manner, der Gebrauch,

2.

usually, gewöhnlich.

wonted, gewohnt.

the chearfulness, die Heiter-
keit, 4.

to desert, verlassen.

even, sogar.

on, bei, with the dative.

the occasion, die Gelegen-
heit, 4.

to comfort, trösten.

under, bei.

the affliction, die Betrübniß,

4

to overwhelm, niederbrücken.

too powerfull, zu stark.

to conceal from her, um sie
vor ihr zu verbergen.

to turn, sich wenden.

to; zu, with the dative.

the physician, der Arzt, 2.

to ask, fragen.

whether, ob.

to remark, bemerken.

invincible, unüberwindlich.

the force, die Stärke, 4.

truth, die Wahrheit, 4.

they, man.

to pretend, vorgeben.

to say, sagen.

to die, sterben.

to must, müssen.

because, weil.

to conspire, sich verschwören.

against, gegen, with the ac-
cusative.

to avow, gestehen.

that there was no other cause of my death, but the apprehensions, which, if I should live, they entertain for their religion. My constancy in the faith is my real crime: the rest is only a colour, invented by interested and designing men." Towards the end of supper she called in all her servants, and drank to them: they pledged her, in order, on their knees, and craved her pardon for any past neglect of their duty; she deigned, in return, to ask their pardon

there, es.

no, kein.

the cause, die Ursache, 4.

was must be rendered by the subjunctive of the imperfect. There is, es giebt.

but, als.

the apprehension, die Besorgniß, 4.

if, wenn, governs the subjunctive.

to live, leben.

for, wegen, with the genitive.

to entertain, unterhalten.

the constancy, die Standhaftigkeit, Beharrlichkeit, 4.

the faith, der Glaube, 3.

real, wahr.

the crime, das Verbrechen, 1.

the rest, das Uebrige.

only, bloß.

the colour, der Vorwand
Scheingrund, 2.

by, von, with the dative.

interested, eigennützig.

designing, ränkevoll.

to invent, erfinden.

towards, gegen.

the end, das Ende, 3.

supper, das Abendessen, 1.

to call in, hereinrufen.

to drink, zutrinken.

to pledge one, einem Bescheid thun.

in order, auf erhaltenen Befehl.

on, auf, with the dative.

the knee, das Knie, 2.

I crave his pardon, ich bitte ihn um Verzeihung.

for, wegen, with the genitive.

any past neglect, jede vorige Vernachlässigung, 4.

for her offences towards them ; and a plentiful effusion of tears attended this last solemn farewel and exchange of mutual forgiveness.

Her care of her servants was the sole remaining affair, which employed her concern in this world. She perused her will, in which she had provided for them by legacies : she ordered the inventory of her goods, cloaths and jewels to be brought her, and she wrote down the names of those to

the duty, die Pflicht, 4.

in return, auch.

to deign, geruhen.

to ask, bitten.

for her offences towards

them, wegen der ihnen

zugefügten Beleidigungen.

plentiful, häufig.

the effusion, die Ergießung,

4.

of, von.

the tear, die Thräne, 4.

to attend, begleiten.

solemn, feierlich.

the farewel, der Abschied, 2.

the exchange, der Aus-

tausch, 2.

mutual, gegenseitig.

the forgiveness, die Verge-

bung, 4.

the care, die Sorge, 4.

of, für, with the accusative.

sole, einzig.

remaining, übrig.

the affair, die Angelegenheit,

4.

the concern, derummer, 1.

to employ, beschäftigen.

to peruse, durchlesen.

the will, das Testament, 2.

by, durch, with the accusa-

tive.

the legacy, das Vermächtniß, 2.

to provide for one, für einen sorgen.

she ordered to be brought

her, sie ließ sich bringen.

the inventory, das Verzeich-

niß, 2.

the goods, die Sachen.

the cloaths, die Kleider.

the jewel, die Juwelle, 4.

to write down, aufschreiben.

whom she bequeathed each particular : to some she distributed money with her own hands ; and she adapted the recompense to their different degrees of rank and merit. She wrote also letters of recommendation for her servants to the king of France, and to her cousin the duke of Guise, whom she made the chief executor of her testament. At her wonted time she went to bed, slept some hours, and then rising, spent the rest of the night in prayer. Having

the name, *der Name*, 3.
each particular. *jedem be-*
sonders.

to bequeath, *vermachen*.

to some, *unter einige*.

to distribute, *austheilen*,
vertheilen,

the money, *das Geld*, 4.
own, *eigen*.

to adapt, *anpassen*.

the recompense, *die Beloh-*
nung, 4.

different, *verschieden*.

the degree, *der Grad*, 2,
plur. *die Grade*.

the rank, *der Rang*, 2.

the merit, *das Verdienst*, 2.

to write, *schreiben*.

also, *auch*.

the letter of recommendation,
der Empfehlungsbrief, 2.

for, *wegen*.

to, *an*, with the accusative.

the king of France, *der Kö-*
nig von Frankreich.

the cousin, *der Vetter*, 1.

the duke, *der Herzog*, 2.

to make, *machen*.

the chief executor, *zum vor-*
nehmsten Vollzieher.

at, *zu*, with the dative.

the time, *die Zeit*, 4.

to go to bed, *zu Bette gehen*.

to sleep, *schlafen*.

the hour, *die Stunde*, 4.

then, *hierauf*.

to rise, *aufstehen*. Rising
must be rendered in Ger-
man by the conjunction
als and the imperfect.

to spend, *zubringen*. *Sie*,
she, must be added in
German.

the rest, *der übrige Theil*,
2.

the night, *die Nacht*, 4.

in prayer, *mit Beten*.

foreseen the difficulties of exercising the rites of her religion, she had had the precaution to obtain a consecrated hoste from the hands of Pope Pius, and she had reserved the use of it for this last period of her life. By this expedient she supplied, as much as she could, the want of a priest and confessor, who was refused her.

Towards the morning she dressed herself in a rich habit of silk and velvet, the only one which she had reserved to

to foresee, vorhersehen.

Having foreseen must be resolved by the conjunction da and the pluperfect. the difficulty, die Schwierigkeit, 4.

the rite, der Gebrauch, 2.

of exercising zu beobachten.

the precaution, die Vorsicht, 4.

rom, von, with the dative.

of Pope Pius, des Papstes Pius.

a consecrated hoste, eine geweihte Hostie, 4.

to obtain, zu erhalten.

the use, der Gebrauch, 2.

of it, derselben.

for, auf, with the accusative.

the period, der Zeitpunkt, 2.

to reserve, verschieben.

by this expedient, dadurch. to supply, ersetzen.

as much as, so gut als.

to can, können.

the want, der Mangel, 1.

the priest, der Priester, 1.

her, ihr.

to refuse, verweigern.

the morning, der Morgen, 1.

to dress one's self, sich kleiden.

in, in, with the accusative. rich, reich.

the habit, der Anzug, 2. das Gewand, 5.

the silk, die Seide, 4.

the velvet, der Sammet, 3.

only, einzig One is omitted in German.

herself. She told her maids, that she would willingly have left them this dress rather than the plain garb which she wore the day before : but it was necessary for her to appear at the ensuing solemnity in a decent habit.

Thomas Andrews, sheriff of the county, entered the room, and informed her, that the hour was come, and that he must attend her to the place of execution. She replied, that she was ready ; and bidding adieu to her servants, she

to reserve to one's self, sich vorbehalten.

to tell one, zu einem sagen.
the maid, die Kammerjungfer, 4.

them, ihnen.

willingly, gern.

rather, lieber.

than, als.

to leave, überlassen.

plain, einfach.

the garb, das Kleid, 5.

before, vorher.

to wear, tragen:

it, es. Was must be rendered by the subjunctive of the imperfect.

at, bei, with the dative.

ensuing, ersolgend.

the solemnity, die Feierlichkeit, 4.

decent, anständig.

to appear, zu erscheinen.

the county, die Grafschaft, 4.

to enter the room, in das Zimmer treten.

to inform, die Nachricht bringen.

her, ihr.

to come, kommen.

her, sie.

to, zu, with the dative.

the place of execution, der Richtplatz, 2. die Richtstätte, 4.

to attend, begleiten, must is to be rendered by the subjunctive of the imperfect.

to reply, antworten.

ready, bereit.

to bid adieu, ein Lebewohl sagen. Bidding adieu must be resolved by the conjunction indem and the imperfect.

followed the sheriff with a serene and composed aspect. In passing through a hall adjoining to her chamber, she was met by the earls of Shrewsbury and Kent, Sir Amias Paulet, Sir Drue Drury, and many other gentlemen of distinction. Here she also found Sir Andrew Melvil, her steward, who flung himself on his knees before her, and wringing his hands, cried aloud: "ah! Madam! unhappy me! what man was ever before the messenger of such

to follow one, einem folgen.
serene, heiter.

composed, ernsthaft.

the aspect, der Blick, 2.

to pass, gehen. In passing
must be resolved by the
conjunction als and the
imperfect.

through, durch, with the accusative.

the hall, der Saal, 2. plur.
die Säle.

adjoining, welcher stieß.

to, an, with the accusative.

the chamber, das Zimmer,
1.

to be met by one, einen an-
treffen.

Sir, Herrn.

many other gentlemen of
distinction, viele andere

vornehme Herren.

here, hier

to find, finden.

Andrew, Andreas.

the steward, der Haushof-
meister, 1.

to fling one's self, sich wer-
fen.

before, vor, with the accusa-
tive.

to wring, ringen.

to cry, schreien.

aloud, laut.

ah! ach!

unhappy me! wie unglück-
lich bin ich!

ever, jemals.

before, vorher.

the messenger, der Bote,

3.

of such, solcher.

for tidings as I must carry, when I shall return to my
 my country, and shall report, that I saw my gracious
 my and mistress beheaded in England!" His tears pre-
 vent further speech; and Mary too felt herself moved,
 from sympathy than affliction. „Cease, my good
 friend, said she, cease to lament: thou hast cause rather
 to rejoice than to mourn: for now shalt thou see the trou-
 ble of Mary Stuart receive their long expected period and
 completion. Know, continued she, good servant, that all

ich, traurig.
 ige, Nachrichten.
 ich.
 ich, tragen.
 ich, with the accusative.
 ich, native country, daß Bas-
 ich, land, 5.
 ich, turn, zurückkehren.
 ich, report, erzählen.
 ich, ous, gnädig.
 ich, mistress, die Gebieterin,
 ich, aded, enthauptet.
 ich, e, sehen.
 ich, event, verhindern.
 ich, er speech, seine fernere
 ich, ede.
 ich, auch.
 ich, el one's self, sich fühlen.
 ich, ed, bewegt.

more, mehr.
 from sympathy, auch Mitge-
 fühle.
 to cease, aufhören.
 to lament, wehklagen.
 cause rather, vielmehr Ur-
 sache.
 to rejoice, Dich zu freuen.
 to mourn, zu trauern.
 for now, denn nun,
 the trouble, die Trübsal, 4.
 plur. die Trübsale.
 long expected, lange erwar-
 tet, ersehnt.
 the period, das Ende, 3.
 and completion, und ihre
 Vollendung.
 receive, erreichen.
 to know, wissen.
 to continue, fortfahren.

the world at best is vanity, and subject still to more sorrow than a whole ocean of tears is able to bewail. But I pray thee, carry this message from me, *that I die a true woman to my religion, and unalterable in my affections to Scotland and to France. Heaven forgive them, that have long desired my end, and have thirsted for my blood as the hart pants after the water brooks. O God! added she, thou that art the author of truth, and truth itself, thou knowest *the inmost recesses of my heart: thou knowest, that I

all the world, die ganze Welt.

at best, aufs höchste.

the vanity, die Eitelkeit, 4

still, noch.

more, mehr.

the sorrow, das Herzeleid, 2.

subject, unterworfen.

a whole ocean of tears, ein ganzes Meer von Thränen.

to bewail, beklagen.

to be able, können.

but, aber.

to pray, bitten.

to carry, bringen.

the message, die Botschaft, Nachricht, 4.

*daß ich als eine Frau sterbe, die ihrer Religion treu, und in ihrer Liebe gegen Schottland und Frankreich unwandelbar ist.

forgive must be rendered by the subjunctive of the present. To forgive one, einem vergeben.

the end, der Tod, 2.

to desire, wünschen.

for, nach, with the dative.

the blood, das Blut, 2.

to thirst, dürsten.

as, wie.

the hart, der Hirsch, 2.

after, nach.

the water brook, der Wasserbach, 3.

to pant, sechzen.

to add, hinzusetzen.

the author, der Urheber, 1.

truth itself, die Wahrheit selbst.

to know, kennen.

*die tiefsten Schlupfwinkel, or die verborgensten Gedanken meines Herzens.

was ever desirous to preserve an entire union between Scotland and England, and to obviate the source of all these fatal discords. But recommend me, Melvil, to my son, and tell him, that, notwithstanding all my distresses, I have done nothing prejudicial to the state and kingdom of Scotland." After these words, reclining herself, with weeping eyes, *and face bedewed with tears, she kissed him. "And so, said she, good Melvil, farewél: once again, farewel,

to know, wissen.

ever, immer.

entire, vollkommen.

the union, die Einigkeit, 4.

between, zwischen.

to preserve, zu erhalten.

the source, die Quelle, 4.

fatal, unseelig.

the discord, die Mißheilig-
keit, 4.

to obviate, zu verstopfen.

to be desirous, wünschen.

to recommend, empfehlen.

the son, der Sohn, 2.

him, ihm.

notwithstanding, ungeachtet,
with the genitive.

the distress, das Drangsal,
2. plur. die Drangsale.

nothing prejudicial nichts
Nachtheiliges.

so, für, with the accusative.

the state, der Staat. This

word is declined in the
singular after the second
declension, and in the plu-
ral (die Staaten) after the
third.

the kingdom, das König-
reich, 2.

to do, thun.

after, nach, with the dative.

the word, das Wort, 2.
plur. die Worte.

reclining herself, she kissed
him, neigte sie sich, und
küßte ihn.

weeping, weinend.

the eye, das Auge, 3.

*und einem mit Thränen be-
negten Angesichte.

and so, und so.

farewel, lebe wohl.

once again, noch einmal.

good Melvil; and grant the assistance of thy prayers to thy queen and mistress."

She then turned to the noblemen who attended her, and made a petition in behalf of her servants that they might be well treated, ¹ that they might be allowed to enjoy the presents which she had made them, ² and be sent safely into their own country. Having received a favourable answer, she moved another request, ³ that they might be permitted to attend at her death: in order, said she, that their eyes may behold, and their hearts bear witness, how patiently

to grant, gewähren.

the assistance, der Beistand,

2.

the prayers, das Gebet, 2.

then, alsdann, sodann.

to make a petition, eine Bitte thun.

in behalf, zu Gunsten.

well, gut.

to treat, behandeln.

to may, mögen. The subjunctive of the imperfect of this verb must be put.

1 daß ihnen verstattet werden möchte.

the present, das Geschenk,

2.

to enjoy, zu behalten.

had made, gemacht hätte.

2 und daß sie ohne Gefahr geschickt werden möchten.

into, in, with the accusative.

the own country, das Vaterland, 5.

having received must be resolved by the conjunction nachdem and the pluperfect. To receive, erhalten.

favourable, günstig.

the answer, die Antwort, 4.

to move, vortragen.

another request, eine andere Bitte.

3 daß ihnen erlaubt werden möchte.

at, bei, with the dative.

to attend, zuhagen zu sein:

in order, deswegen.

that, damit.

may behold, sehen.

may bear witness, bezeugen:

their queen and mistress can bear her execution, and how constantly she perseveres in her attachments to her religion. The earl of Kent opposed this desire, and told her that they would be apt, by their speeches and cries, both to disturb herself and spectators: he was also apprehensive, 1 lest they should practise some superstition, unmeet for him to suffer; 2 such as dipping their handkerchiefs in her blood: for that was the instance which he made use of. „My lord, said the queen of Scotland, I assure you that they shall not incur any blame in any of the actions which

how patiently, wie geduldig.
can bear, ertragen könne.

constantly, standhaft.

in her attachments, in ihrer
Anhänglichkeit.

to, an, with the dative.

to persevere, beharren. The
subjunctive of the present
must be put.

to oppose, sich widersetzen,
with the dative.

the desire, das Verlangen,
1.

by their speeches and cries,
durch ihre Reden und ihr
Geschrei.

both, sowohl.

herself, sie selbst.

and, als auch.

the spectator, der Zuschauer,
1.

to disturb, außer Fassung
setzen.

to be apt, können. The sub-
junctive of the imperfect
of this verb must be put
also, auch.

to be apprehensive, besor-
gen.

1 Sie möchten eine abergläu-
bische Handlung verrich-
ten, welche er nicht dulden
könne.

2 so könnten sie ihre Tücher
in ihr Blut eintauchen.

the instance, das Beispiel,
2.

to make use of, anführen.

my lord, mein Herr.

to assure, versichern.

not to incur any blame, sich
keinen Tadel ziehen.

you have named. But alas! poor souls, it would be a great consolation to them, to bid their mistress farewell. And I hope, added she, ¹ that your mistress being a maiden queen, would vouchsafe, in regard of womanhood, that I should have some of my own people about me at my death: I know, that her majesty has not given you any such strict command, but that you may grant me a request of far greater courtesy, even though I were a woman of much inferior rank ² to that which I bear.“ Finding that the earl of

in any, wegen einer.

the action, die Handlung,

4.

to name, nennen:

but alas! aber ach!

poor, arm.

the consolation, der Trost,

2.

to, für, with the accusative.

to bid one farewell, von einem Abschied nehmen.

to hope, hoffen.

¹ daß, da Ihre Gebieterin eine jungfräuliche Königin ist, sie, in Hinsicht auf Weiblichkeit, erlauben werde.

my own people, meine eigenen Leute.

about me, um mich.

should have, haben darf.

her majesty, ihre Majestät.

to give one, einem geben.

any, ein.

strict, streng.

the command, der Befehl,

2.

but, sondern.

you, Sie:

me, mir.

far, weit.

the courtesy, die Höflichkeit, - Artigkeit, 4.

grant, gewähren.

to may, können.

even though, sogar, dann wenn.

the woman, die Frau, 4.

inferior, niedriger.

² als derjenige ist, den ich habe.

finding must be resolved by

da and the imperfect.

still, immer noch.

Kent persisted still in his refusal, her mind, which had fortified itself against the terrors of death, was affected 1 by this circumstance of indignity, for which she was not prepared. „I am cousin 2 to your queen, cried she, and descended from the blood royal of Henry the seventh, and married queen of France, and an anointed queen of Scotland.“ 3 The commissioners perceiving how invidious

in, auf, with the dative.
the refusal, die Weigerung,
4.

to persist, bestehen.
the mind, das Gemüth, 5.
to fortify one's self, sich
stärken.

against, gegen, with the accusative,
the terror, der Schrecken, 1.
1 durch dieses abscheuliche
Benehmen.

for, auf, with the accusative.

prepared, vorbereitet.

to affect, angreifen.

cousin, die Nichte, 4.

2 Some substantives which denote an inclination of mind or also an office, have in English the dative instead of the genitive; but in German the genitive must be put. Exam-

ples: I am a friend to truth, ich bin ein Freund der Wahrheit; he is a slave to his passions, er ist ein Sklave seiner Leidenschaften; he was ever a friend to me, er war stets mein Freund; he was ever a father to the poor, er war immer ein Vater der Armen.

to cry, ausrufen.

and descended, und stamme ab.

from, von, with the dative.

royal, königlich.

and married queen, und bin eine verheirathete Königin.

to anoint, salben.

3 Die Kommissarien merkten.

how invidious, in welchem gehässigen Sichte.

their obstinacy would appear, conferred a little together, and agreed, that she might carry a few of her servants 1 along with her. She made choice 2 of four men and two maid-servants for that purpose. She then passed in another hall, 3 where was erected the scaffold, covered with black; and she saw with an undismayed countenance the two executioners and all the preparations of death. The room was crowded with spectators, and no one was so steeled against all sentiments of humanity, 4 as not to be moved,

the obstinacy, die Hartnäckigkeit, 4.

appear, erscheinen.

to confer, sich unterreden.

a little, ein wenig, ein Weilchen.

together, mit einander.

to agree, einwilligen.

a few, einige.

1 mit sich.

to carry, nehmen. She might carry must be rendered by the subjunctive of the imperfect.

to make choice, auswählen.

2 vier männliche und zwei weibliche Diener.

for that purpose, zu diesem Ende.

to pass, gehen.

then, hierauf.

3 wo das schwarz ausge-

schlagene Blutgerüst aufgerichtet war.

to see, sehen.

undismayed, unerschrocken.

the executioner, der Vollstrecker des Todesurtheils, der Richter, Scharfrichter, 1.

the preparation of death, die Vorbereitung zum Tode, 4.

crowded, angefüllt.

and no one, und nicht einziger.

so, so.

the sentiment, die Empfindung, 4.

of humanity, der Menschlichkeit.

steemed, verhärtet.

4 daß er nicht gerührt wurde.

when he reflected on her royal dignity, considered the surprising train of her misfortunes, beheld her mild but inflexible constancy, recalled her amiable accomplishments, or surveyed her beauties, which though faded by years, and yet more by her afflictions, still discovered themselves in this fatal moment. Here the warrant for her execution was read to her; and during this ceremony she was silent, but shewed in her behaviour an indifference and unconcern,

on, über, with the accusative.

the dignity, die Würde, 4.

to reflect, nachdenken.

surprising, wunderbar.

the train, der Lauf, 2.

the misfortune, die Wiedermöglichkeit, 1.

to consider, erwägen.

mild, sanft.

but, aber.

inflexible, unbiegsam.

the constancy, die Standhaftigkeit, 4.

to behold, betrachten.

amiable, liebenswürdig.

the accomplishment, die Vollkommenheit, 4. der Vorzug, 2.

to recall, sich ins Gedächtniß zurückrufen.

her beauties, ihre Schönheit.

to survey, ins Gesicht fassen.

though, obgleich.

by years, durch die Jahre.

yet more, noch mehr.

the afflictions, der Gram, 2.

faded, ihrer Blüthe beraubt.

still, immer noch.

fatal, unglücklich.

the moment, der Augenblick, 2.

to discover one's self, sich enthüllen, sichtbar machen.

the warrant, der schriftliche Befehl, 2.

for, zu, with the dative.

to read, vorlesen.

during, während, with the genitive.

the ceremony, die Handlung, 4.

silent, still.

but shewed, zeigte aber.

the behaviour, das Betragen, 1.

as if the business had no wise regarded her. Before the executioners performed their office, the dean of Peterborough stepped forth; and though the queen frequently told him, that he needed not ¹ concern himself about her, that she was settled in the ancient Catholic and Roman religion, and that she meant to lay down her life in defence of that faith; ² he still thought it his duty to persist in his lectures and his exhortations, ³ and to endeavour her conversion. The terms which he employed, were, under colour of pious

the indifference, die Gleichgültigkeit, 4.

the unconcern, die Ruhe, 4.
as if, als wenn, with the conjunctive.

the business, die Sache, 4.
no wise, keineswegs, gar nicht.

her, sie.

to regard, betreffen.

before, bevor.

the office, das Amt, 5.

to perform, verrichten.

to step forth, vortreten.

Frequently, oft.

to need, brauchen, nöthig haben.

¹ sich um sie zu bekümmern.

ancient, alt.

Catholic and Roman, römisch-katholisch.

was settled, befestiget wäre.

in defence, zur Bertheidigung.

to lay down, hingeben, aufopfern.

to mean, wollen.

² er hielt es immer noch für seine Pflicht.

the lecture, die Strafpredigt, 4.

the exhortation, die Ermahnung, 4.

to persist, fortzufahren.

³ und sich um ihre Befeh-
rung Mühe zu geben.

the term, der Ausdruck, 2.
das Wort, 2.

to employ, gebrauchen.

under co'our, unter dem Vorwande.

pious, fromm.

the instruction, die Belehrung, 4.

instructions, very cruel insults on her unfortunate situation; and besides their own absurdity may be regarded as the most mortifying indignities, to which she was ever yet exposed. He told her, that the queen of England had in this moment shewn a tender care of her; and notwithstanding the punishment justly to be inflicted on her for her manifold trespasses, was determined to use every expedient for saving her soul from that destruction with

very, sehr.

cruel, grausam.

the insult, der Ausfall, 2.

on, auf, with the accusative.

unfortunate, unglücklich.

the situation, die Lage, 4.

besides, außer, with the dative.

own, eigen.

the absurdity, die Abschwächtheit, Ungereimtheit, 4.

may, können sie.

as, als.

mortifying, kränkend.

the indignity, die Schändlichkeit, 4.

to regard, betrachten.

ever yet, noch jemals.

exposed, ausgesetzt.

a tender care of her, eine zärtliche Sorgfalt für sie.

to shew, zeigen.

had must be rendered by the subjunctive.

4 und daß sie ungeachtet der Strafe.

justly on her, welche ihr auf eine gerechte Art.

for, wegen, with the genitive. manifold, vielfach.

the trespass, die Vergehung, 4.

to be inflicted, auferlegt werde.

determined, entschlossen.

was must be rendered by the subjunctive.

every, jeder, jede, jedes.

the expedient, das Mittel,

1.

to use, anzuwenden.

for, um.

from that destruction, von dem Untergange.

it, sie.

which it was so nearly threatened; that she was now standing upon the brink of eternity, and had no other means ⁵ of escaping endless perdition, ¹ but by repenting herself of her former wickedness, by justifying the sentence pronounced against her, by acknowledging the queen's favours, and by exerting a true and lively faith in Christ Jesus: that the scriptures were the only rule of doctrine, the merits of Christ the only means of salvation, and, if she trusted in the inventions or devices of men, she must

so nearly, in so kurzer Zeit.
was threatened, bedroht
würde.

saving, zu retten.

now, jetzt.

upon, an, with the dative.

the brink, der Rand, 5.

eternity, die Ewigkeit, 4.

to be standing, stehen. The
subjunctive of the imper-
fect must be put.

the means, das Mittel, 1.

5 dem endlosen Verderben
zu entgehen.

1 als wenn sie ihre vorige
Ruchlosigkeit bereute, das
gegen sie ausgesprochene
Urtheil für gerecht erklär-
te.

the favours, die Gnade, 4.

to acknowledge, anerkennen.

to exert, beweisen.

true, wahr.

lively, lebendig.

in Christ Jesus, an Jesum
Christum.

the scriptures, die Schrift,

4.

only, einzig.

the rule, die Richtschnur, 4.

of doctrine, der christlichen
Lehre.

the merit, das Verdienst, 2.

of Christ, Christi.

of salvation, selig zu werden.

and, und daß.

if, wenn, governs the sub-
junctive.

to trust, sich verlassen.

in, auf, with the accusative.

the invention, die Erfindung,

4.

the device, die Erdichtung,

4.

expect in a moment to fall 1 into utter darkness, into a place where shall be 2 weeping, howling and gnashing of teeth : that the hand of death was upon her, the ax was laid to the root of the tree, the throne of the great judge of heaven was erected, the book of her life 3 was spread wide, and the particular sentence and judgment was ready to be pronounced upon her : and that it was now during this important moment in her choice, either 4 to rise the resurrection of life, and hear that joyful salutation : Come, ye blessed of my father ; or to share the resurrection of con-

she must expect, sie gewärtig
seyn müsse.

1 in die äufferste Finsterniß,
to fall, zu stürzen.

into, an, with the accusative.
the place, der Ort, 5.

2 Weinen, Heulen u. Zähne-
klappern.

shall be must be rendered
by the subjunctive.

upon her, auf ihr.

to be, ruhen.

the ax, die Art.

to, an, with the accusative.

the root, die Wurzel, 4.

the tree, der Baum, 2.

to lay, legen.

the throne, der Thron, 2.

the judge, der Richter, 1.

the book, das Buch, 5.

the life, das Leben, 1.

3 weit aufgeschlagen wäre.

particular, besonder.

the judgment, das Gericht,

2.

to be ready to be pronoun-
ced, bald ausgesprochen
werden.

upon her, über sie.

now, jetzt.

important, wichtig.

the choice, die Wahl, 4.

to be, stehen.

4 entweder zur Auferstehung
des Lebens aufzuerstehen.

that, jener, jene, jenes.

joyful, freudenvoll.

the salutation, der Gruß, 2.

hear, zu hören.

to come, kommen.

ye blessed, ihr Gesegneten.

of condemnation, der Ver-
damniß.

to share, zu theilen.

demnation, 5 replete with sorrow and grief, and to suffer that dreadful denunciation: Go, ye cursed, into everlasting fire.

During this discourse the queen could not forbear sometimes betraying her impatience, ¹ by interrupting the preacher; and the dean, finding that he had profited nothing by his lecture, at last bid her change her opinion, repent ² her of her former wickedness, and settle her faith upon this ground, that only ³ in Christ Jesus could she hope to be saved. She answered again and again with great earnest-

⁵ die mit Jammer und Herzeleid angefüllt wäre.

dreadful, schrecklich.

the denunciation, die Ankündigung, 4.

to suffer, zu ertragen.

ye cursed, ihr Verfluchten.

into, in daß.

everlasting, ewig.

fire, daß Feuer, 1.

the discourse, das Gerede, 2.

to can, können.

not forbear nicht unterlassen.

sometimes, bisweilen.

¹ durch Unterbrechung des Predigers.

the impatience, die Ungeduld, 4.

betraying, zu verrathen, zu erkennen, zu geben.

and the dean, finding, und

als der Predant sah.

to profit, ausrichten.

at last bid her, so gebot er

besahl er ihr endlich.

the opinion, die Meinung, 4.

change, zu ändern.

² her is not expressed in German.

upon this ground, auf diesem Grund.

settle, zu bauen.

that, damit.

she, sie.

only, bloß.

³ durch Jesum Christum.

hope, hoffen.

could must be rendered by the subjunctive.

to be saved, selig zu werden.

to answer, antworten.

again and again, zu wiederholten Malen.

ness: "trouble not yourself any more about the matter; for I was born in this religion, I have lived in this religion, and in this religion I am resolved to die." Even the two earls perceived, that it was fruitless to harrass her any further with theological disputes, and they ordered the dean to desist from his unseasonable exhortations, and to pray for her conversion. During the dean's prayer she employed herself in private devotion from the office of the Virgin; and after he had finished, she pronounced aloud

the earnestness, der Ernst,

2.

to trouble one's self, sich be-
unruhigen.

any more, weiter mehr.

about the matter, darüber.

for, denn.

to be born, geboren werden.

to live, leben.

I am resolved, bin ich ent-
schlossen.

even, sogar.

to perceive, einsehen, sich
überzeugen.

fruitless, fruchtlos.

any further, noch ferner.

theological, theologisch.

the dispute, die Streitigkeit,

4.

to harrass, zu quälen.

to order, befehlen, with the
dative.

from, von, governs the da-
tive.

unseasonable, ungeitig.

to desist, abzustehen.

for, für, with the accusative.

to pray, zu beten.

to employ one's self in pri-
vate devotion, im Stillen
beten.

from, aus, with the dative.

the office, das Gebetbuch, 5.

the Virgin, die heilige Jung-
frau, 4.

after, nachdem.

to finish, endigen.

to pronounce, aussprechen.

in English, in englischer
Sprache.

aloud, mit lauter Stimme.

some, einige.

the petition, die Bitte, 4.

for, nämlich für.

some petitions in English, for the afflicted church, for an end of her own troubles, for her son, and for queen Elizabeth; and prayed God, that the princess might long prosper and be employed in his service. The earl of Kent observing that in her devotions she made frequent use of the crucifix, could not forbear reproving her for her attachment to that popish trumpery, as he termed it; and he exhorted her to have Christ in her heart, and not in her hand. She replied with presence of mind, that it was difficult to hold such an object in her hand ⁴ without feeling her heart touched with some compunction.

afflicted, in Traurigkeit versunken.

the church, die Kirche, 4.

for an end, für die Beendigung.

the trouble, die Unruhe, Verwirrung, 4. Own is not expressed in German.

to pray, bitten. Sie must be added in German.

the princess, die Fürstin, 4.

long, lange.

to prosper, glücklich seyn.

the service, der Dienst, 2.

to employ, gebrauchen.

to may, mögen.

to observe, bemerken.

in her devotions, bei ihrer Andacht.

the crucifix, das Crucifix, 2. to make frequent use of something, etwas häufig gebrauchen.

popish, päpstlich.

the trumpery, das Zeug, 2. as, wie.

to term, nennen.

to reprove one for something, einem etwas verweisen.

to exhort, ermahnen.

the heart, das Herz, 3.

to reply, erwiedern.

the presence of mind, die Geistesgegenwart, 4.

difficult, schwer.

such an object, einen solchen Gegenstand.

to hold, zu halten.

4 ohne ihr Herz von Behuth ergriffen zu fühlen.

She now began, with the aid of her two women, to disrobe herself; and the executioner also lent his hand, to assist them. She smiled and said, that she was not accustomed to undress herself before so large a company, nor to be served by such valets. ¹ Her servants, seeing her in this condition, ready to lay her head upon the block, burst into tears and lamentations: she turned about to them; put her finger upon her lips, ² as a sign of imposing silence upon them; and having given them her blessing, desired ³ them

to begin, anfangen.

now, nun.

with the aid, mit Hülfe.

the woman, die Frau, 4.

to disrobe one's self, sich ausfleiden.

also, auch.

to lend, leihen, bieten, reichen.

to assist them, um ihnen zu helfen.

to smile, lächeln.

accustomed, gewohnt.

to undress one's self, sich entfleiden.

before, vor, with the dative.

so large a company, eine so grosse Gesellschaft.

nor, noch.

by, von, with the dative.

such, solcher, solcher, solches.

the valet, der Diener, 1.

to serve, bedienen.

¹ Da ihre Dienerinnen sie in diesem Zustande sahen, indem sie im Begriffe war, ihr Haupt auf den Block zu legen; so etc.

to burst, ausbrechen.

into, in.

the lamentation, die Wehklage, 4.

to turn about to one, sich zu einem herumwenden.

to put, legen.

the finger, der Finger, 1.

the lip, die Lippe, 4.

² um ihnen dadurch anzudeuten, sich ruhig zu verhalten.

having given must be resolved by nachdem and the pluperfect.

the blessing, der Segen, 1.

to desire, verlangen.

³ daß sie für sie beten sollten.

to pray for her. One of her maids, whom she had appointed for that purpose, covered her eyes with a handkerchief; she laid herself down ⁴ without any sign of fear or trepidation; and her head was severed from her body at two strokes by the executioner. He instantly held it up to the spectators, streaming with blood and agitated with the convulsions of death; the dean of Peterborough alone exclaimed: "So perish ⁵ all queen Elizabeth's enemies." The earl of Kent alone replied: "Amen." The attention of all the other spectators was fixed on the melancholy scene

one, einer, eine, eines.

the maid, die Jungfrau, Die-
nerinn, 1.

for that purpose, dazu.

to appoint, bestimmen.

to cover, bedecken.

to lay one's self down, sich
niederlegen.

⁴ ohne das mindeste Zeichen
von Furcht oder Zittern.

the head, der Kopf, 2.

from, von.

the body, der Körper, 1.

at, mit, with the dative.

the stroke, der Streich, 2.

by, von.

to sever, trennen.

to hold, halten.

instantly, sogleich.

to, gegen, with the accusa-
tive.

up, in die Höhe.

to stream with blood, von
Blut triefen.

to agitate, hin und her bewer-
gen.

with, von.

the convulsion, die Zuckung;
4.

to exclaim, ausrufen.

alone, allein.

to perish, umkommen.

⁵ alle Feinde der Königin
Elisabeth.

the attention, die Aufmerk-
samkeit, 4.

all the other, alle übrigen.

was, war.

on, auf, with the accusative.

before them, das gegenwär-
tige.

melancholy, traurig.

the scene, das Schauspiel, 2.

before them; and zeal and flattery alike gave place to present pity and admiration of the expiring princess.

Thus died (1587), in the forty-fifth year of her age, and the nineteenth of her captivity in England, Mary queen of Scotland; a princess ¹ of great accomplishments, both of body and mind, natural as well as acquired; but unfortunate in her life, ² and during one period very unhappy in her conduct. The beauties of her air combined to make her the most amiable of women; and the charms of her address and conversation aided the impression which her lovely

to fix, richten.

and zeal and flattery, und

Eifer und Schmeichelei.

to give place, weichen.

alike to present pity, steht
auf gleiche Art dem Mitleiden.

admiration, die Bewunderung, 4.^t

expiring, sterbend.

the princess, die Fürstin,
4.

thus, so.

the forty-fifth year, das fünf
und vierzigste Jahr.

the age, das Alter, 1.

the captivity, die Gefangenschaft, 4.

1 von grossen, sowohl angeborenen als erworbenen, Vollkommenheiten des Körpers und Geistes.

but, die aber.

in her, in ihrem.

unfortunate, vom Schicksale
verfolgt werde.

2 und während eines Zeitraumes in ihrer Aufführung sehr unglücklich war.

the beauty, die Schönheit,
4.

the air, das äusserliche Ansehen, 1.

to combine, sich vereinigen.
her, sie.

the, zu der.

amiable, liebenswürdig.

to make, zu machen.

the charm, der Reiz, 2.

the address, die Anrede, 4.

the conversation, die Unterhaltung, 4.

to aid, unterstützen, verstärken.

figure made on the hearts of all beholders. Ambitious and active in her temper, yet inclined to cheerfulness and society ; of a lofty spirit, constant and even vehement in her purpose, yet polite, and gentle, and affable in her demeanor ; she seemed ³ to partake only so much of the male virtues as to render her estimable, without relinquishing

the impression, der Eindruck, 2.

lovely, liebenswürdig.

the figure, die Gestalt, 4.

on, auf, with the accusative.

of all beholders, aller derer, welche sie sahen.

ambitious, ehrgeizig.

active in her temper, von thätigem Geiste.

yet, dabei aber.

to, zur (instead of zu der.)

the cheerfulness, die Fröhlichkeit, 4.

the society, die Gesellschaft, 4

inclined, geneigt. The words yet inclined etc. are better rendered thus : dabei aber eine Freundin der Fröhlichkeit und des geselligen Lebens.

of, von.

lofty, hoch, erhaben. When hoch is prefixed to a substantive, they say der hohe Thurm, die hohe Kirche, das hohe Gebäude ; ein

hoher Thurm, eine hohe

Kirche, ein hohes Gebäude.

the spirit, die Seele, 4.

constant, beharrlich.

even, sogar.

vehement, heftig.

the purpose, das Vorhaben, 1 yet, aber.

polite, höflich.

gentle, artig.

affable, leutselig, freundlich.

the demeanor, das Betragen, 1.

to seem, scheinen. She (sie) must be put in German after seemed.

³ nur die männlichen Tugenden zu besitzen, welche sie achtungswürdig machten. without, ohne.

that, jener, jene, jenes.

soft, sanft.

the grace, die Annehmlichkeit, 4.

relinquishing, zu entsagen. Entsagen governs the dative.

those soft graces which compose the proper ornaments of her sex. In order to form a just idea of her character, we must set aside one part of her conduct, while she abandoned herself to the guidance of a profligate man, and must consider these faults, ⁴ whether we admit them to be imprudences or crimes, as the result of an inexplicable, though not uncommon, inconstancy in the human mind; of the frailty of our nature, of the violence of passion, and of the influence, which situations and sometimes momentary inci-

proper, eigenthümlich.

the ornaments, die Zierde, 4.

the sex, das Geschlecht, 5.

to compose, ausmachen.

The words which compose etc. may also be rendered thus: in welchen

die eigenthümliche Zierde ihres Geschlechts besteht.

in order to, um uns.

just, richtig.

the idea, die Vorstellung.

of, von.

the character, der Charakter,

1. die Gemüthsart, 4.

form, zu machen.

we must, müssen wir.

the part, der Theil, 2.

to set aside, bei Seite setzen, unberücksichtigt lassen.

while, so lange.

to abandon one's self, sich überlassen.

the guidance, die Leitung, 4.

profligate, lasterhaft.

the man, der Mann, 5.

must, wir müssen.

the fault, der Fehler, 1.

⁴ wir mögen sie nun entweder für Unflugheiten, oder für Verbrechen halten.

as, als.

the result, die Folge, 4.

inexplicable, unerklärlich.

though, obgleich.

uncommon, selten.

the inconstancy, der Wandelmuth, 2.

human, menschlich.

the mind, das Gemüth, 5.

consider, betrachten.

the frailty, die Gebrechlichkeit, 4. Als die Folge

must be repeated before

the words of the frailty.

the nature, die Natur, 4.

dents have on persons, whose principles are not thoroughly confirmed by experience and reflexion. Enraged by the ungrateful conduct of her husband, seduced by the treacherous counsels of one in whom she reposed confidence, transported by the violence of her own temper, which never lay sufficiently under ⁵ the guidance of discretion, she was betrayed into actions, which obscured her good qualities.

the violence, die Heftigkeit, 4.

the passion, die Leidenschaft,

4.

the influence, der Einfluß,

2.

situations, die Umstände.

sometimes, bisweilen.

momentary, augenblicklich.

the incident, der Vorfall, 2.

on, auf, with the accusative.

the principle, der Grundsatz,

2.

not thoroughly, nicht vollkommen.

by experience and reflexion,

durch Erfahrung und

Nachdenken.

to confirm, befestigen.

to enrage, wüthend machen.

ungrateful, undankbar.

the conduct, das Betragen,

1.

the husband, der Gemahl, 2.

to seduce, verführen.

treacherous, treulos.

the counsels, die Rathschläge.

in, auf, with the accusative.

confidence, ihr Vertrauen.

to repose, setzen.

to transport, hinreißen.

her own temper, ihr Temperament, 2.

never, nie.

sufficiently, hinlänglich.

under, unter, with the dative.

5 die Herrschaft der Vernunft.

to lie, stehen.

into, zu.

the action, die Handlung, 4.

to betray, verleiten.

the quality, die Eigenschaft,

4.

to obscure, verdunkeln.

CHAPTER XVII.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

The prepositions (*die Vornörter*) serve to express the different relations, which the substantives of a phrase bear towards one another, when these relations cannot be expressed by the declensions. The substantive to which they are prefixed, must be put into a certain case, which is determined by rule and practice.

Some German prepositions govern the genitive, others the dative, others the accusative, and others the genitive and dative. There are also some, which require, according to circumstances, sometimes the dative, and sometimes the accusative.

I.

Prepositions which govern the genitive.

<i>Anstatt</i> , statt, instead of.	<i>Trotz</i> , in spite of.
<i>Außerhalb</i> , without, out of.	<i>Um . . . willen</i> , for the sake of.
<i>Diesseits</i> , on this side.	
<i>Halben</i> , halber, for the sake of.	<i>Ungeachtet</i> , notwithstanding.
<i>Innerhalb</i> , within.	<i>Unterhalb</i> , in the lower part of.
<i>Jenseits</i> , on that side.	<i>Unweit</i> , not far from.
<i>Kraft</i> , laut, by virtue of.	<i>Bermöge</i> , by virtue of.
<i>Mittelst</i> , vermittelst, by means of.	<i>Während</i> , during.
<i>Oberhalb</i> , at the higher part of.	<i>Wegen</i> , because of, by reason of, on account of.

Observations on the use of these prepositions.

Anstatt is employed in two different ways. Either it is placed before its substantive, like other prepositions, or it is separated, the substantive being placed between the two particles, of which this preposition is composed. Thus they say : *anstatt des Fürsten*, or *an des Fürsten Statt*, in the stead of the prince ; *anstatt meiner*, or *an meiner Statt*, in my stead ; *an Kindes Statt annehmen*, to adopt.

Halben and halber are immediately placed after their substantive. Halber is employed, when the article is omitted. Thus they say : *ich thue es bloß der Gesellschaft halben*, I do it only for the sake of the company ; *er thut es der Freundschaft halben*, he does it out of friendship : *Alters halber*, on account of age. When halben is used with the genitive of the personal pronouns, the *r* of the latter is usually suppressed, a *t* being substituted in its place, and the two words being contracted into one. Thus they say : *meinethalben*, instead of *meinerhalben* ; *seinethalben* instead of *seinerhalben* ; *ihrethalben* instead of *ihrerhalben*. *Er that es meinethalben, seinethalben, ihrethalben*, he did it for my, his, her sake. In *euertalben* and *unserthalben* the *r*, to which a *t* is added, is not suppressed.

Innerhalb and trotz are employed in the following manner : *wir waren innerhalb der Schanzen verborgen*, we were hidden within the trenches ; *ich werde innerhalb weniger Tage zurückkommen*, I shall come back within a few days ; *ich werde ihr trotz seiner Vorstellungen einen Besuch abstaten*, I shall pay her a visit in spite of his remonstrances.

Um . . . **willen** is composed of two particles. The particle **um** is put before the substantive, and the other follows after it. Examples : **um eines leeren Titels willen** opfer-
te er das Glück seines eigenen Kindes auf, for the sake of
an empty title he sacrificed the happiness of his own child;
es ist nicht thöricht, wenn man glaubt, Gott habe die Thie-
re um der Menschen willen geschaffen, it is not foolish to
think that God has created the beasts for the sake of the men ;
um Gottes willen, helfen Sie mir, wenn Sie können, for
God's sake relieve me if you can ; **um des Himmels wil-**
len, hören Sie mich an, for heaven's sake hear me ; **ich**
liebe sie um ihrer selbst willen, I love her for her own
sake.

Ungeachtet is better placed before than after the substan-
tive : **ich liebe ihn ungeachtet seiner Häßlichkeit,** I love him
notwithstanding his ugliness. It is a fault to say **dem un-**
geachtet, instead of **dessen ungeachtet,** notwithstanding that.
Ungeachtet is also a conjunction, and signifies though.

Wegen is put before or after the substantive. Examples :
er konnte mir wegen seines Alters nur von fern nachfol-
gen, he could by reason of his age follow me only at a
distance ; **sie verlor ihr Vermögen ihrer Gütherzigkeit we-**
gen, she lost her fortune by reason of her good nature ;
wegen des Preises einig werden, to agree about the price.
This preposition is employed in the same manner as **hal-**
ben with the personal pronouns : **meinetwegen, feinewe-**
gen, etc.

II.

Prepositions which govern the dative.

Aus, from ; out of ; by ; of.	Mit, with.
Ausser, out of ; besides.	Nach, to ; after ; for ; at ; according to.
Bei, by ; near ; with ; to ; at.	Nächst, after.
Binnen, within.	Nebst, with.
Entgegen, towards, to meet ; contrary.	Sammt, with.
Gegenüber, opposite, over- against.	Seit, since.
Längs, along.	Von, from ; of ; by.
	Zu, at.
	Zunächst, next.
	Zumider, against.

Observations on the use of these prepositions.

Aus and ausser are employed in the following manner: er ist aus einer alten Familie, he is of an ancient family ; wir reiseten gestern aus London, we set yesterday from London ; er kommt aus der Fremde, he comes from abroad ; er rettete sie aus der Todesgefahr, he rescued her from the danger of death ; er kommt aus dem Bette, he comes out of bed ; sie kamen aus der Kirche, they came out of the church.

Bei and binnen are employed thus: er nahm ihn bei den Haaren, he took him by the hair ; wer ruft mich bei meinem Namen ? who calls me by my name ? ich bezeuge bei meiner Ehre, I protest on my honour ; bei meiner Seele, ich hasse sie nicht, upon my soul I do not hate her ; sie stand bei mir, she stood near me ; giebt es schöne Spaziergänge bei dem Hause ? are there fine walks near the

house ? es wird binnen zwei Tagen geendiget seyn, it will be finished within two days.

Entgegen is always placed after the substantive ; er geht seinem Bruder entgegen (he goes towards his brother) he goes to meet his brother ; dieses ist der Natur der Dinge entgegen, this is contrary to the nature of things.

Gegenüber is placed after its substantive : er wohnt meinem Hause, or mir gegenüber, he lives opposite to my house, he lives overagainst me.

Längs. Sie marschirten längs dem Ufer, they marched along the shore.

Mit. Er schnitt es mit einem Messer entzwei, he cut it in two with a knife ; sie versicherte mich mit Thränen in den Augen, she assured me with tears in her eyes ; mit Vorsatz, on purpose ; ich werde mit ihm sprechen, I shall speak with him, to him.

Nach. Nach England, nach London reisen, to go to England, to London ; das Schiff ist nach London bestimmt, the ship is bound for London ; er ist der nächste nach dem Könige, he is the next man to the king ; nach dieser Zeit, after that time ; er schreibt nach seiner Vorschrift, he writes after his copy. Nach, according to, may also sometimes be put after its substantive. Thus they say : er ist nach meiner Meinung, or meiner Meinung nach auf einem falschen Wege, he is in my opinion on a wrong way.

Seit. Seit dem Tode seines Vaters, since the death of his father ; seit einigen Tagen, since a few days.

Von Er reiset von Amsterdam nach London, he goes from Amsterdam to London ; er ist eben von meinem Bruder gekommen, he is just come from my brother ; es ist nicht weit von hier, it is not far from hence ; der Wagen war ganz von Cedernholz, the chariot was all of cedar ; der

Rock war von feinem Tuche, the coat was of fine cloath ; dieses **Buch** handelt von der Unsterblichkeit unserer Seele, that book treats of the immortality of our soul.

Zu. Zu Berlin, at Berlin ; ich bin zu Hause gewesen, I have been at home ; zu einer andern Zeit, at another time ; zu gleicher Zeit, at the same time ; er war unglücklich bis zum letzten Augenblicke seines Lebens, he was unhappy till the last moment of his life ; stehen Sie früh zu Ihrer Arbeit auf, rise early to your work ; er warf den Brief zum Fenster hinaus, he cast the letter out of the window.

Zunächst is placed after its substantive : er saß mir zunächst, he sat next to me.

Zuwider is always placed after its substantive : dieses ist den Gesetzen der Natur zuwider, this is contrary to the laws of nature ; dieses ist mir zuwider, that goes against my stomach.

III.

Prepositions which govern the accusative.

Durch, through ; by.	Ohne, without.
Für, for ; instead of.	Sonder, without.
Gegen, towards ; to ; against.	Um, about , for ; of.
Gen, towards.	Wider, against.

Durch. Ich reisete durch gefährliche Wälder, I travelled through dangerous forests ; alle Dinge sind durch das Wort Gottes erschaffen, all things are created by the word of God. **Durch** is also sometimes placed after its substantive ; ich lag die ganze Nacht durch in Schlafrocke in meinem Bette, I lay in my bed, the whole night through, in my night-gown.

Für. Es ist hier kein Platz für sie, there is no place for them here ; mein Haus ist für Sie und für Ihre Freunde offen, my house is open to you and to your friends ; er war für jene Zeiten ein gelehrter Mann, he was a learned man for those times ; ich habe ihn für Sie gehalten, I took him for you.

Gegen. Die Franzosen marschirten gegen den Rhein, the French marched towards the Rhine ; es wird gegen das Ende dieser Woche fertig sein, it shall be ready towards the end of this week ; er war gerecht gegen ihn, he was just to him ; er ist gegen die Gefühle der Menschlichkeit unempfindlich, he is insensible to all the feelings of humanity ; sie fochten fünf gegen fünf, they fought five to five ; sie marschirten gegen den Feind, they marched against the enemy ; es ist gegen meine Pflicht, it is against my duty.

Gegen is only used in this phrase : er richtete seine Augen gen Himmel, he turned his eyes towards heaven.

Ohne. Ich kann es nicht ohne die Erlaubniß meines Vaters thun, I cannot do it without the consent of my father ; ich kann nicht ohne einen Freund leben, I cannot live without a friend.

Sonder is only used with the word Zweifel : es ist sonder Zweifel (besser ohne Zweifel) das Beste, was Sie thun können, 'tis without doubt the best thing you can do.

Um. Er fiel ihr um den Hals, he fell about her neck ; das Schnupftuch war ihr um den Kopf gebunden, the handkerchief was tied round her head ; ich ging um die Stadt herum spazieren, I walked round about the town ; die Welt läuft um die Sonne herum, the world goes round the sun ; er reisete um die Welt, he went round the world ; ich hatte Bücher von allen Gattungen um mich herum, I

had books of every kind round me ; bis um zwölf Uhr des Nachts, till twelve o'clock at night ; ich ging um eins des Morgens zu Bette, I did go to bed at one in the morning.

Wider is not to be confounded with wieder. Wider denotes a resistance, and signifies against ; wieder intimates a repetition, and signifies again. Es ist wider Ihre Pflicht, it is against your duty ; ich werde sogleich wieder kommen, I shall come again directly.

IV.

Prepositions which govern the genitive and the dative.

There are only two prepositions which govern the genitive and dative, namely : zufolge, according to, and längs, along. Zufolge governs the genitive, when it is placed before the substantive, and the dative, when it stands after it : zufolge seines Briefes, or seinem Briefe zufolge wird er morgen hier seyn, according to his letter he will be here to-morrow ; zufolge seiner Grundsätze or seinen Grundsätzen zufolge, in pursuance of his principles. As for längs it is more used with the dative.

V.

Prepositions which govern the dative and accusative.

An, at ; on, upon.

Auf, upon.

Hinter, behind.

In, in, into.

Neben, by the side of ; near.

Ueber, above ; over ; at ; on ; upon.

Unter, under ; below ; among.

Vor, before ; at ; with ; of ; against.

Zwischen, between.

Observations on the use of these prepositions.

These prepositions govern the dative, when they intimate a state of rest, or a permanent action, that is, such a one, which is not directed from one place towards another. In the contrary case, they govern the accusative.

An, with the dative. Er schreibt an seinem Pulte, he is writing at his desk ; er stand am neuen Thore Schilbwa- che, he stood sentry at the new gate ; wir saßen am Ti- sche, an einem Tische, we sat at table, at a table ; es ge- schah am bestimmten Tage, it happened at the day ap- pointed.

An with the accusative. Sehen Sie alles an seinen rech- ten Platz, set every thing in its right place ; ich setzte mich an den Tisch, I sat down at the table ; ich gehe an einen andern Ort, I go to another place.

Auf, with the dative. Er liegt auf dem Ohre, he lies on-his ear ; das Buch liegt auf dem Tische, the book lies upon the table ; dort sitzt der Vogel auf einem Baume, there sits the bird on a tree ; er beleidigte mich auf freier Straße, he insulted me in the open street.

Auf, with the accusative. Er legt sich auf das Ohr, he lays himself upon his ear ; er kniet auf die Erde, he kneels down upon the ground ; legen Sie es auf den Tisch, lay it upon the table.

Hinter, with the dative. Hinter dem Vorhange stehen, to stand behind the curtain ; es liegt hinter der Thüre, it lies behind the door.

Hinter, with the accusative. Er ging hinter die Thüre, he went behind the door.

In, with the dative. Er ist in der Schule, he is at school ; er ist in der Stadt, he is in town ; ich werde in

Gesellschaft seyn, I shall be in company ; in Deutschland, in Germany ; bei seiner Ankunft in London, on his arrival at London.

In, with the accusative. Sie warfen seinen Leichnam in das Meer, they threw his corpse into the sea ; da er seine Schulden nicht bezahlen konnte, so wurde er in das Gefängniß geworfen, being not able to pay his debts, he was thrown into prison ; er warf sich in einen Armstuhl, he threw himself into an armchair.

Neben, with the dative. Er ging neben dem Könige, he went by the side of the king ; er stand neben mir, he stood near me.

Neben, with the accusative. Er setzte sich neben mich, he sat down near me.

Ueber, with the dative. Es ist über der Thüre, it is above the door ; über dem Vorhofe stand folgende Inschrift, over the porch there was the following inscription ; er blieb über der Erde, he remained above ground.

Ueber, with the accusative. Ueber die Gasse laufen, to run over the street ; er sprang über einen Bach, he leapt over a brook ; er ging über das Ziel hinaus, he went beyond the mark ; er fiel ins Wasser bis über die Ohren, he fell over head and ears into the water ; er steckt bis über die Ohren in Schulden, he is over head and ears in debts.

Unter, with the dative. Unter einem Baume sitzen, to sit under a tree ; der Hund liegt unter dem Tische, the dog lies under the table ; unter der Erde, under the ground ; er erlag unter der Last seiner Jahre, he sunk under the load of his years ; unter dem Joch der Leidenschaften, under the yoke of the passions.

Unter, with the accusative. Ich steckte meine goldene Uhr unter mein Kopfkissen, I put my golden watch under

vor pillow; ein Land unter Wasser setzen, to lay a country under water; sich unter das Wasser tauchen, to dive under water.

Vor, with the dative. **Vor** einem stehen, to stand before one; vor seinem Feinde fliehen, to fly before one's enemy; als er in das Zimmer trat, so standen alle Anwesenden vor ihm auf, when he entered the room, all who were present rose to him.

Vor, with the accusative. Etwas vor die Thüre werfen, to throw something before the door; die Pferde vor den Wagen spannen, to put the horses before the carriage.

Vor is not to be confounded with **für**. **Für** is used 1. when it signifies instead, for. Er schreibt einen Brief für mich, he writes a letter in my stead; Jesus litt für unsere Sünden, Jesus suffered for our sins; er hat für Sie gesprochen, he has spoken for you; sie zitterten für ihre Weiber und Kinder, they trembled for their wives and children; er focht für das allgemeine Beste, he fought for the public good; er hatte eine besondere Achtung für heilige Sachen, he had a particular respect for holy things; er wird für unsere Sicherheit sorgen, he will provide for our safety; er schreibt für Geld, he writes for money; ich halte ihn für einen großen Redner, I think him a great orator; sie hält sich für ein schönes Frauenzimmer, she thinks herself a handsome woman; ich nehme es für eine ausgemachte Sache an, I take it for granted; für wen sehen Sie mich an? whom do you take me for? Some Germans use **für** instead of wider or gegen; they say for instance: ein Mittel für das Fieber, a remedy against the fever. But this practice is to be blamed and not to be imitated. **Für** is used 2. in the following phrases: was ist das für ein

Mann ? what man is this ? **Mann für Mann**, man by man ; **Wort für Wort**, word for word ; **wir gingen Schritt für Schritt**, we went step by step ; **für jetzt**, for the present ; **für die Zukunft**, for the future ; **ich für meinen Theil**, I for my part ; **wir für unsern Theil**, we for our parts, etc. **Vor** has the following significations. It expresses 1. a reference to a place : **vor der Thüre sitzen**, to sit before the door ; 2. a priority of time : **vor ungefähr 14 Tagen**, about a fortnight ago ; **vor einigen Tagen**, a few days since ; **vor Tage**, before day ; 3. a preference : **ich gebe ihr den Vorzug vor allen andern Frauenzimmern auf der Erde**, I give her the preference above all other women on earth ; 4. a presence : **Sie sollten sich vor ihm schämen**, you ought to be ashamed of it in his presence ; **ich habe den Tod oft vor den Augen gehabt**, death has been often present before my sight.

Zwischen, with the dative. **Er saß zwischen ihm und mir**, he sat between him and me ; **der Fluß läuft zwischen den zwei Hügeln**, the river runs betwixt the two hills.

Zwischen, with the accusative. **Etwas zwischen die Stühle werfen**, to throw something between the chairs ; **etwas zwischen zwei Finger nehmen**, to take something between two fingers.

Some observations on the prepositions.

There are some prepositions, which are sometimes united with the dative and accusative of the definite article. Thus they say :

Am, instead of **an dem** : **er saß am Fenster**, he sat at the

window ; er starb am vierten (4ten) July, he died on the 4th of July ; am Ende, at the end ; am Leben, alive.

Ans, instead of an das : wir kamen glücklich ans Ufer we got happily on shore.

Aufs, instead of auf das : aufs Eis gehen, to go upon the ice.

Durchs, instead of durch das : er lief durchs Haus, he ran through the house.

Fürs, instead of für das : fürs Vaterland sterben, to die for one's country.

Im, instead of in dem : Friedrich der Zweite, König von Preussen, bestieg den Thron im Jahre 1740, und starb im Jahre 1786, Frederic the second, king of Prussia, mounted the throne in the year 1740, and died in the year 1786.

Ins, instead of in das : ins Wasser fallen, to fall into the water.

Vom, instead of von dem : ich empfing gestern einen Brief vom Bruder meiner Frau, I received yesterday a letter from the brother of my wife ; vom Wetter reden, to speak about the weather.

Zum, instead of zu dem : Jesus zeigt uns den Weg zum Himmel, Jesus shews us the way to heaven ; zum Richter gehen, to go before the judge ; ich sage es Ihnen nun zum zweiten Male, I tell it now to you for a second time ; zum ersten, first.

Zur, instead of zu der : zur Hochzeit gehen, to go to the wedding.

The prepositions are also combined with adverbs, and a considerable number of adverbs arises from this combination. Such adverbs are the following ones :

Dadurch, thereby.

Dafür, for it.

Dagegen, against it; in return.

Damit, therewith,

Daran, thereon,

Darauf, thereupon; upon it.

Daraus, therefrom,

Darin, dahinein, thereinto.

Darin, therein.

Darnach, thereafter.

Darüber, thereat.

Darum, thereabout.

Darunter, thereunder.

Davon, thereof; therefrom.

Davor, before it; from it.

Dawider, against it.

Dazu, thereto.

Dazwischen, therebetween.

Herab, downwards.

Herauf, upwards.

Heraus, out.

Hernach, afterwards.

Herunter, downwards.

Hierauf, hereupon.

Hierin, herein,

Hiermit, herewith; by this.

Hinab, downwards.

Hinauf, upwards.

Hinaus, out.

Hinunter, downwards.

Wobei, where-by.

Woburch, where-by.

Wofür, for which; for what?

Wogegen, against which; against what?

Womit, where-with.

Woran, where-upon; on what? on which?

Worauf, where-upon; where-to.

Worin, where-in.

Worüber, where-upon; where-at; upon-what.

Worunter, under which; where-by; amongst which.

Wobon, where-of; woben ich lebe, where-upon I live.

Wovor, before which; against which; from which; wovor ich mich fürchte, of which I am afraid.

Wozu, for which; to which.

The prepositions are sometimes united with adverbs, which are placed after the word governed by the prepositions. Examples: *von diesem Tage an*, from this day

forwards ; von seiner frühen Jugend an, from his early youth ; wir gingen hinter den Jägern her, we went behind the huntsmen ; er kam zum neuen Thore herein, und fuhr zu demselben wieder hinaus, he came in through the new gate and passed through the same gate ; er schoss bei dem Ziele vorbei, he shot beside the mark ; der Pfeil ging über meinem Kopfe weg, the arrow flew over my head ; das Wasser läuft unter der Brücke weg, the water runs under the bridge.

From day to day is rendered in German by von einem Tage zum andern ; for life by, auf Lebenszeit ; on condition that by unter der Bedingung, daß ; upon what grounds by aus welchen Gründen ; in times out of mind by vor unbedenklichen Zeiten ; out of gunshot, sicher vor dem Schusse ; von Alters her, from old times ; that is not my fault by das ist nicht meine Schuld, or ich kann nichts dafür.

Exercises.

I.

He lives without the walls of the town. He came to me about his brother. I did it for the sake of his children. Notwithstanding your description I have not found his house. By means of your description I shall soon find out his garden. All Asia contributed during the space of two hundred and twenty years to enrich the temple of Diana. I cannot come to you by reason of the sickness of my father.

to live, wohnen.

the wall, die Mauer, 4.

the town, die Stadt, 4.

to, zu.

about, halben.

to do, thun.

the description, die Beschreibung, 4.

to find, finden.

soon, bald.

to find out, ausfindig machen.

all Asia, ganz Asien.

to contribute, beitragen.

the space, der Zeitraum, 2.

of, von.

the temple, der Tempel, 1.

of Diana, der Diana.

to enrich, zu bereichern.

the sickness, die Krankheit,

4.

II.

A mad dog ran through the town. The prisoners looked through an iron grate. Many men are hurried on by their passion. Won't stands for will not. This mark stands for his name, because he cannot write. Self-defence is as necessary for nations as to single men. I hope you

mad, wüthend, toll.

the dog, der Hund, 2.

to run, laufen.

the prisoner, der Gefangene,
1.

to look, sehen.

iron, eisern.

the grate, das Gitter, 1.

to hurry on, hinreißen.

by, durch.

the passion, die Leidenschaft,
4.

to stand, stehen.

for, für, anstatt.

the mark, das Zeichen, 1.

the name, der Name, 3. (in
the genitive des Namens).

because, weil.

self-defence, die Selbstver-
theidigung, 4.

as, eben so.

for, für.

nation, die Nation, 4.

as, als.

to, für.

single, einzeln.

will properly provide for her child. Our friend had provided a very good lodging for us. He passed upon his master for a man of honesty. It is situated towards the north. I shall see you again towards the end of the winter. She died about eight o'clock in the morning. If my love for you did not need me, I would not stay for an hour in this house. By obedience children give the best proofs of their love to their parents. If our enemies offend us out of malice, we must not likewise be malicious. They

to hope, hoffen.

properly, gehörig.

for, für.

to provide, sorgen.

very, sehr.

the lodging, die Wohnung,

4.

for, für.

to provide, besorgen.

to pass, gelten.

upon, bei.

the master, der Herr, 3.

(genit. des Herrn; dat.

dem Herrn; plur. die

Herrn.)

for, für.

a man of honesty, ein ehr-

licher Mensch, 3

to be situated, liegen.

the north, Norden.

to see again, wieder sehen.

the winter, der Winter, 4.

about, gegen.

in the morning, des Mor-

gens.

if, wenn.

for, gegen.

to do keep, halten. The

subjunctive must be put

for an hour, eine Stunde.

to stay, bleiben.

by, durch.

the obedience, der Gehor-

sam, 2.

the proof, der Beweis, 2.

to, gegen.

the enemy, der Feind, 2,

out of, aus.

the malice, die Bosheit, 4.

to offend, beleidigen.

likewise, auch.

malicious, boshaft.

will incur every body's contempt, if they act maliciously against us. Likewise we will incur every body's contempt, if we act maliciously against them. We must forgive our enemies and act generously towards them. Every good patriot and honest fellow-citizen will perform his duty without a spur. You may wake me at five o'clock. Wake me at seven o'clock to morrow if you please.

to incur every body's contempt, sich Jedermanns Verachtung zuziehen.

maliciously, boshast. against, gegen.

to act, handeln.

likewise, auf gleiche Art.

to forgive one, einem vergeben.

generously, großmüthig.

towards, gegen.

every, jeder.

the patriot, der Vaterlandsfreund, 2.

honest, rechtschaffen.

the fellow-citizen, der Mitbürger, 1.

the duty, die Schuldigkeit, 4.

the spur, der Sporn, Antrieb, 2. Sporn is declined in the singular after the second, and in the plural after the third declension: des Spornes, die Spornen.

to perform, thun.

to may, können.

to wake, wecken.

at five o'clock, um fünf Uhr.

to-morrow, morgen.

if you please, gefälligst.

CHAPTER XVIII.

OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs (die Neben- oder Umstandswörter) are added to verbs, adjectives, and sometimes even to other adverbs, in order to point out some particular circumstances therein.

There are ten kinds of adverbs : adverbs of quality (Umstandswörter der Beschaffenheit), of order and number (der Ordnung und Zahl), of place (des Ortes), of time (der Zeit), of quantity (der Menge und Vielheit), of affirmation (der Bejahung), of negation (der Verneinung), of doubt (des Zweifels und der Ungewißheit), of interrogation (fragende Umstandswörter), and lastly, of comparison (vergleichende Umstandswörter).

List of the principal adverbs.

I.

Adverbs of quality.

Umsonst, vergebens, vergeblich, in vain.	Boshaft, maliciously.
Anders, otherwise.	Glücklich, happily.
Nämlich, namely.	Gütig, kindly.
Als, as.	*Vortrefflich, excellently.
Wie, like.	Wohl, well.
	Uebel, ill.

*This class of adverbs being extremely numerous, and comprehending the greatest part of those adjectives which may be used as adverbs, it is not necessary to cite many examples.

II.

Adverbs of order and number.

Erstens, zum ersten, zuerst, firstly, in the first place, first.	Zweitens, zum zweiten, secondly, in the second place.
	Drittens, thirdly.
	Viertens, fourthly.

Einnial, once ; noch einmal, a second time.	Hernach, hereafter.
Zweimal, twice.	Dann, alsdenn, then.
Drcimal, thrice, three times.	Hiernächst, next.
Viermal, four times.	Ferner, weiter, farther.
Vielfmal, many times.	Und so weiter, and so on, and so forth.
Abermals, abermal, noch mal, a second time.	Endlich, at last.
Wieder, again.	Zuletzt, lastly.
Allerlei, of all kinds.	Nach und nach, by degrees.
Zweierlei, of two sorts.	Allmählig, insensibly.
Anfangs, at first.	Eingeln, one by one.

III.

Adverbs of place.

Wo, where.	Hieraus, hence.
Irgendwo, somewhere.	Da, there.
Nirgend, nowhere.	Daher, thence.
Anderswo, elsewhere.	Dahin, thither.
Allenthalben überall, every where.	Dort, there.
Woher, whence.	Dorthier, thence.
Wohin, whither.	Dorthin, thither.
Wodurch, whereby.	Hier, hither.
Fern, weit, far.	Herein, in ; come in.
So weit, so far.	Heraus, out.
Draussen, without.	Herunter, herab, down.
Darin, within.	Herauf, up.
Auswärts, abroad.	Auf und ab, up and down.
Hier, here.	Aufwärts, upwards.
Hierdurch, hereby.	Herüber, towards this place.
Hierher, hither.	Quer über, across.
	Hin, there.

Hin und her, to and fro.	Unten, brunten, below.
Hinein, in.	Vorn, before.
Hinaus, out.	Vormwärts, forward.
Hinunter, hinab, down.	Hinten, behind.
Hinauf, up.	Hinterwärts, rückwärts, backwards.
Links hin, links, to the left.	Von innen, from within.
Rechts hin, rechts, to the right.	Von wannen, whence.
Oben, droben, above ; up stairs.	Heim, home.
Obenan, uppermost.	Seitwärts, sideways.

IV.

Adverbs of time.

Vormittags, the forenoon.	Neulich, jüngst, leßthin, la- tely.
Nachmittags, the afternoon.	Unlängst, vor kurzem, kürz- lich, not long since, of late.
Vorgestern, the day before yesterday.	Erst eben, so eben, just now.
Gestern, yesterday.	Seitdem, since.
Gestern Abends, last night.	Sonst, ehemals, ehem, vordem, vor diesem, for- merly.
Heute, to day.	Damals, then, at that time.
Heut' zu Tage, now a days.	Alsdann, at that time.
Morgen, to morrow.	Einmal, einst, once, one day.
Früh, in the morning.	Vorher, zuvor, before.
Morgen früh, to morrow morning.	Hernach, after.
Uebermorgen, the day after to morrow.	Nachher, hereafter.
Längstens, at the most.	Dereinst, demaleinst, one day.
Lang, längst, schon längst, vorlängst, long ago, a long time ago.	

Nächstens, next.
 Ehestens, at the soonest.
 Hinführo, henceforth,
 Ins künftige, künftighin, in
 time to come, in future.
 Von nun an, henceforward,
 from this time forth.
 Je, jemals, ever.
 Nie, niemals, never.
 Bis her, bis hierher, hither-
 to.
 Jetzt, now, at this time, at
 present.
 Für jetzt, for the present.
 Nun, nunmehr, now.
 Je eher, je lieber, the soo-
 ner the better.
 Schon, bereits, already.
 Noch, yet; noch immer, still.
 Allezeit, immer, immerdar,
 stets, always.
 Auf immer, for ever.
 Beständig, continually.
 Ewig, eternally.
 Unaufhörlich, unablässig,
 without ceasing.
 Oft, öfters, oftmals, often.
 Stündlich, hourly.
 Täglich, daily.
 Wöchentlich, weekly, a
 week.

Monatlich, monthly.
 Jährlich, yearly.
 Lebenslang, during life.
 Allemal, at all times.
 Manchmal, bisweilen, zu-
 weilen, sometimes.
 Dann und wann, now and
 then.
 Selten, seldom, rarely.
 Augenblicklich, in a moment.
 Gleich, sogleich, immediate-
 ly, directly, on the spot.
 Bald, soon.
 Bald darauf, soon after.
 Sobald als möglich, as soon
 as possible.
 Frühzeitig, zeitig, in good
 time, early.
 Bezeiten, betimes.
 Spät, late.
 zur Unzeit, out of time.
 Unterdessen, in the mean
 time.
 Möglich, suddenly, on a
 sudden.
 Auf einmal, at once; at a
 time.
 Unversehens, unawares.
 Von ungefähr, by chance,
 accidentally.

V.

Adverbs of quantity.

Sehr , very.	Wenig , little.
Gar , very.	Genug , enough.
Ueberaus , ungemein, extremely, extraordinarily, exceedingly.	Ganz , gänzlich, quite.
Viel , much.	Ganz und gar , entirely.
Zu viel , too much.	Schlechterdings , absolutely.

VI.

Adverbs of affirmation.

Ja , yes.	Unfehlbar , infallibly.
Gewiß , certainly.	Wirklich , really, indeed.
Wahrlich , wahrhaftig, truly.	Allerdings , by all means.
Sicherlich , freilich, to be sure.	

VII.

Adverbs of negation.

Rein , no.	Nichts , nothing.
Nicht , not.	Keineswegs , by no means.
Ganz und gar nicht , not at all.	Gar nichts , nothing at all.
Noch nicht , not yet.	hingegen , on the contrary.

VIII.

Adverbs of doubt.

Vielleicht , perhaps.	1 Raum , scarce, no sooner.
Wahrscheinlich , probably.	Schwerlich , hardly.

1 Examples : er hatte es kaum gethan, als er zu lachen anfang, he had scarce done it when he fell a laughing ; sie hatte kaum den Brief gelesen, als sie in Ohnmacht fiel, she had no sooner read the letter than she swooned away.

IX.

Adverbs of interrogation.

Wann ? wenn ? when ?	Wie vielmal ? how many times.
Warum ? why ?	Wie oft ? how often.
Warum das ? why so ?	Weshwegen ? wherefore ?
Wie ? how ?	Von wannen ? whence ?

X.

Adverbs of comparison.

Mehr, more.	Gonst, otherwise.
Um so viel mehr, so much the more.	Uebrigens, for the rest.
Am meisten, the most.	Ueberdies, besides.
Meistens, mostly, most.	Fast, ¹ beinahe, almost.
Meistentheils, größtentheils, for the most part.	Vielmehr, rather.
Weniger, less.	Sogar, even.
Am wenigsten, least.	Insonderheit, vornehmlich, chiefly, especially.
Wenigstens, at least.	Besonders, particularly.
Noch so viel, never so much.	Gleichsam, as it were.
Höchst, most.	Eben so, just so.
Höchstens, at the most.	Gleichfalls, ebenfalls, likewise.

1 Example : es waren so viel Leute in diesem engen Zimmer, daß ich beinahe (or bald) erstickt worden wäre.

there were so many people in that narrow room that I had like to have been stifled.

Examples and observations on some adverbs,

I. The most part of German adjectives may be employed in their absolut state like adverbs. Thus the adjective *streng*, severe, used as an adverb, signifies severely; for instance: *urtheilen Sie nicht so streng*, don't judge so severely.

II. There are some adjectives which cannot be employed as adverbs. Such adjectives are for instance those which are derived from adverbs of time, or some preposition. Examples: *bisherig*, that which has occurred till now, from *bisher*, hitherto; *gestrig*, of yesterday, from *gestern*, yesterday; *vordere*, hintere, innere, which are only employed in their constructed state.

III. The adverbs of the German language form their degrees of comparison nearly like the adjectives. Their comparative is formed by adding to the positive the syllable *er*, and by changing the vowels *a*, *o*, *u* into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, when they occur in the last syllable. Examples: *vernünftig*, in a rational manner; *vernünftiger*, in a more rational manner; *oft*, often, frequently; *öfter*, oftener, more frequently. The superlative of German adverbs is formed by adding to the positive the letters *sten*, and by prefixing the compound particle *am*; or by adding to the positive the syllable *ste*, and by prefixing the words *auf das* or *auf*. Besides the vowels *a*, *o*, *u* are commuted, as in the comparative, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, when they occur in the last syllable.

Examples : *am vernünftigsten*, in the most rational manner ; *am öftesten*, oftenest ; *ich werde mich auf das* or *am längste drei Monate zu Paris aufhalten*, I shall stay at Paris three months at the most. But when I say : *er hat sich am längsten zu Paris aufgehalten*, these words signify : he did stay at Paris more long than in any other town. We see from this example, that there is a difference, between the superlative which terminates in *sten*, and that which ends in *ste*. The superlative which terminates in *sten*, denotes the supreme degree ; but that which ends in *ste*, indicates only an eminent degree. In order to make that difference quite plain, I shall yet cite one example. *Sie tanzt am bewundernswürdigsten*, she dances in a more admirable manner than all the others, her dancing deserves the most admiration ; *sie tanzt auf das bewundernswürdigste*, she dances most admirably.

The adverbs derived from some other word, to which the syllable *haft* is added, do not commute the vowels into *ä*, *ö*, *ü* in the comparative and superlative. For instance : *herzhaft*, courageously ; compar. *herzhafter* ; superl. *am herzhaftesten*. It is the same case with the following words : *abgeschmackt*, absurd ; *bunt*, party-coloured ; *falsch*, false ; *flach*, flat ; *froh*, glad, chearful ; *gerade*, straight ; *hohl*, hollow ; *höflich*, gracious ; *fahl*, bald ; *farg*, niggardly ; *knapp*, scanty ; *lahm*, lame ; *loß*, loose ; *matt*, faint ; *morsch*, brittle ; *nackt*, naked ; *platt*, flat ; *plump*, clumsy ; *roh*, raw ; *rund*, round ; *sacht*, soft ; *sanft*, mild ; *schlaff*, slak ; *schlang*, slander ; *starr*, staring ; *stolz*, proud ; *straff*, stiff ; *stumm*, mute ; *stumpf*, blunt ; *toll*, mad ; *voll*, full ; *wahr*, true ; *zähm*, tame. These words which are employed as adjectives and adverbs, retain their vowels in the last

syllable and of course do not undergo the change which is usual in other words.

IV. The superlative of the German adverbs terminates in its absolute state in *st*. But this termination is only used in some words. Amongst this number are the following adverbs which are employed in conversation or in epistolary correspondence as terms of politeness: *allerliebste*, *gehorsamste*, *unterthänigste*, *verbindlichste*, *gnädigste*, *hulbreichste*, *gütigste*, *freundlichste*.

V. The following adverbs form their comparative and superlative in an irregular manner :

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Gut, well.	Besser, better.	Am besten, the best.
Viel, much.	Mehr, more.	Am meisten, most.
Bald, soon; <i>kal-</i> most.	Eher, sooner.	Am ehesten, the soonest.
Gern, willingly; <i>3</i> gladly.	Lieber, rather.	Am liebsten, best.
Hoch, highly.	Höher, higher.	Am höchsten, high- est.
Nähe, near.	Näher, nearer.	Am nächsten, near- est.

1 See *beinahe*.

2 *Eher* signifies also *rather* ; as : *er würde eher ihr Tyrann als ihr Gatte seyn*, he would be her tyrant rather than her husband ; *sie war eher eitel als stolz*, she was rather vain than proud ; *Sie sollten es um desto eher thun*, you should do it rather for that.

3 Examples : *er wollte lieber gut seyn, als gut scheinen*, he would rather be than appear good ; *er beschloß, lieber zu*

sterben, als eine solche niedrige Handlung zu begehen, he determined to die rather than commit so base an action.

4Examples ; dieses ist er am liebsten, that he likes best ; welche Jahreszeit haben Sie am liebsten ? which season do you prefer ?

VI. They say : unter allen Thieren ist der Löwe am stärksten, instead of : das stärkste, of all animals the lion is the strongest ; unter allen Menschen, die ich kenne, ist er am geduldigsten, instead of : der geduldigste, of all the men I know he is the most patient.

VII. The adverbs are placed in German in simple tenses after the verb, and in compound tenses after the auxiliary verb and before the participle past and the infinitive. Examples : das Kind, welches in der Wiege lag, weinte bitterlich, the child that lay in the cradle wept bitterly ; geben Sie gefälligst auf sie Acht, look to them if you please ; ihr eiskaltes Herz ist endlich aufgethaut, her icy heart is at last thawed ; es wird alsdann zu spät seyn, it will be too late at that time. When one or more words stand in compound tenses after the auxiliary verb, the adverb relative to the principal verb is usually placed after these words, but sometimes also, according to circumstances, before them. Examples : ich habe von Ihrem Freunde wohl sprechen hören, I have heard your friend well spoken of ; ich habe vergangene Nacht nicht gut geschlafen, I have not slept well last night ; ich habe ehemals mehrere Freunde gehabt. Sie haben mich vielleicht vergessen ; doch glaube ich es nicht ; ich wenigstens werde nie sie vergessen, I had formerly several friends. They have perhaps forgot me ; however I don't think so ; I shall, at least, not forget them. Wenn du deine Begierden nach den Gesetzen der Natur einschränkest, sagt Seneca, so wirst du immer reich

seyn : wenn du dich aber von der Meinung beherrschen lässest ; so wirst du immer arm seyn, if you limit your appetites according to the laws of nature, says Seneca, you will always be rich ; but if you are overruled by opinion, you will always be poor. When a phrase commences with an adverb, it is accompanied with an inversion. Example : gestern saß ich auf einer Bank beim Mondscheine, yesterday I was sitting on a bench by moonshine. -

VIII. When the stands before a comparative, it is expressed in German by the adverbs je and desto. Examples : the poorer the nobleman, the prouder he will be, je ärmer der Edelmann ist, desto stolzer wird er seyn ; the richer we are, the kinder we ought to be, je reicher wir sind, desto gütiger sollten wir seyn ; the more lucrative the place, the less business, je einträglicher das Amt ist, desto weniger Geschäfte hat man ; the higher we mount, the deeper we will fall, je höher wir steigen, desto tiefer werden wir fallen ; I am the more obliged to serve him, being my best friend, ich bin desto mehr verpflichtet ihm zu dienen, da er mein bester Freund ist ; this is the more foolish in him, being not rich, dieses ist desto thöricht in ihm, da er nicht reich ist

Exercise.

He is a most learned man. Strange things happen now a days. He totally ruined him. You did wrong in not

most, höchst.

learned, gelehrt.

strange, seltsam.

the thing, das Ding, 2.

to happen, sich zutragen.

totally, gänzlich.

to ruin, zu Grunde richten.

wrong, unrecht.

in not, daß Sie nicht.

the duty, die Pflicht, 4.

observing your duty. I had almost forgotten you. She is passionately in love with him. I am very fond of music, and I think, you are also fond of it. My sister plays sometimes on the harp. You speak very well German. I have learnt German likewise, but for want of exercise I have forgot all. This prospect pleases me extremely, and I already rejoice beforehand at the pleasant hours, which we shall spend together in this garden. We sincerely repent of not having followed your advice. It will very likely rain. It thundered yesterday dreadfully ; it lightened, and it grew so dark, that we could scarcely see our

to observe, beobachten. The
imperfect must be put in
German.

to forget, vergessen.
passionately, leidenschaftlich.
with, in, (accus.)

in love, verliebt.

to be fond of something, et-
was lieben.

music, die Musik, Tonkunst,
4.

to think, glauben.
of it, sie.

to play, spielen.

on, auf, (dat).

the harp, die Harfe, 4.

likewise, auch.

for want of exercise, aus
Mangel an Übung.
all, Alles.

the prospect, die Aussicht,
4.

to please one, einem gefallen.

to rejoice, sich freuen.

beforehand, zum voraus.

at, auf, (accus.)

pleasant, angenehm.

the hour, die Stunde, 4.

together, mit einander.

to spend, zubringen.

to regret, bedauern.

sincerely, aufrichtig.

of not, daß wir nicht.

the advice, der Rath, 2.

to follow, befolgen.

likely, wahrscheinlich.

to rain, regnen.

to thunder, donnern.

dreadfully, entsetzlich.

to lighten, blitzen.

road. This boy writes well, but this girl writes better than he ; she writes the best of all my scholars. I see your sister more frequently this year than formerly.

to grow, werden.

dark, finster.

the road, der Weg, 2.

the boy, der Knabe, 3.

to write, schreiben.

the girl, das Mädchen, 1.

of, unter, (dat.)

the scholar, der Schüler, 1.

CHAPTER XIX.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions (die Bindewörter) are so called, because they bind or connect the different parts of speech.

There are eight kinds of conjunctions, namely : copulative conjunctions (verbindende Bindewörter), which serve to connect the different members of the phrases ; causal conjunctions (ursächliche Bindewörter), which indicate a cause ; conditional conjunctions (bedingliche Bindewörter), which serve to express certain conditions ; disjunctive conjunctions (zertheilende or sondernde Bindewörter), which separate two things from each other, and affirm, though in an indefinite manner, only one of them ; opponent conjunctions (entgegengesetzte Bindewörter), which make an opposition between the sentence which precedes and that which follows ; comparative conjunctions (vergleichende Bindewörter), which are placed before that part of the phrase, which serves to explain the other by means of

some comparison ; exclusive conjunctions (*ausschließende Bindewörter*), which serve to express an exclusion ; and lastly, conjunctions of time (*ein Zeitverhältniß bezeichnende Bindewörter*), which serve to express different modes of time.

LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL CONJUNCTIONS.

I.

Copulative conjunctions.

Und, and.	Nicht allein or nicht nur,
Auch, also, too.	sondern auch, not only,
Sowohl, als, or als auch,	but also.
as well as, as also.	Theils — theils, partly —
Oder, or.	partly.

II.

Causal conjunctions.

Denn, for.	Demnach, mithin, where-
Weil, because.	fore.
Da, since.	Folglich, consequently.
Da doch, when.	Daß, that.
Daher, darum, therefore,	Damit, that.
wherefore.	Daß nicht, damit nicht,
Also, therefore.	lest.

III.

Conditional conjunctions.

Wenn, wofern, if.	Wenn nicht, wofern nicht
	wo nicht, if not,

Wenn etwa, if peradven- Falls, in case that.
ture. Ob, whether.

Dafern, provided.

IV.

Disjunctive conjunctions.

Entweder — oder, either — or.

V.

Opponent conjunctions.

Aber, allein, but.

Jedoch, however.

Sondern, but.

Obgleich, obſchon, ungeach-

Doch, dennoch, gleichwohl,
yet.

tet, miemohl, though.

VI.

Comparative conjunctions.

So — auch, as — as.

Je nachdem, according as.

VII.

Exclusive conjunctions.

Weder — noch, neither — nor.

VIII.

Conjunctions of time.

Als, da, when.

Sobald, ſobald als, as soon

Indem, whilst.

as.

Nachdem, after.

Während, ſo lange, while.

Ehe, before.

Examples and observations on some conjunctions.

I. **Denn**, for, is not to be confounded with **dann**, then, which is an adverb of number. Examples: *er war nicht zu Hause : denn seine Stubenthür war verschlossen*, he was not at home, for his room-door was shut; *wir müssen erst von den Mitteln sprechen, wo wir das Geld, welches wir brauchen, hernehmen, und dann von unserm Gewinne*, we are to speak first of the means to get the money we want, and then of our profit. **Denn** is also often used in asking: *was soll ich denn thun ?* what shall I do then ?

II. **Weil**. *Geschieht es deswegen, weil ich Ihnen keine Geschenke machen konnte ?* is it because I could make you no presents ?

III. **Da**. *Da sich die Sache also verhält ; so kann ich es nicht ändern*, since it is so, I cannot help it ; *da ich Ihnen nichts Neues erzählen kann, so will ich Ihnen gar nichts erzählen*, since I can tell you nothing new, I will tell you nothing at all. **Da** is frequently used in German to supply the place of the English participles, as we have already seen. Examples: *da Sie so viel für ihn gethan haben ; so sollten Sie nun auch an sich denken*, having done so much for him, you should now think on yourself too.

IV. **Da doch**. *Da Sie doch wußten, daß es zu Ihrem Nachtheile war*, when you know, that it was to your prejudice.

V. **Daher**, **darum**. *Er erröthet ; daher ist er schuldig*, he blushes, therefore he is guilty ; *daher soll ein Mann Vater und Mutter verlassen, und seinem Weibe anhängen*, therefore shall a man leave father and mother and cleave

to his wife; ich liebe sie nicht; darum vermeide ich ihre Gesellschaft, I do not love her, therefore I shun her company.

VI. Also. Danken regiert den Dativ; ich muß also sagen: Sie müssen Ihrem Freunde danken, von dem ich diese Nachrichten habe, danken governs the dative. I must therefore say: you are to thank your friend from whom I have these news.

VII. Demnach, mithin. Die Seele und der Körper sind auf das innigste miteinander verbunden. Demnach, (mithin) kann der Körper ohne die Seele nichts vornehmen: soul and body are intimately connected together. Wherefore the body cannot do any thing without the soul.

VIII. Folglich. Wenn der Mensch nicht in Gesellschaft lebte; so würde er Andern seine Gedanken nicht mittheilen können. Folglich würden wir keine Bücher haben, und nichts Nützliches lernen können, if man did not live in society, he would not be able to communicate his thoughts to others. Consequently we should have no books, and not be able to learn any thing useful.

IX. Daß governs the indicative and subjunctive. It governs the indicative, when they speak positively of something. Examples: er hat einen solchen Kopf, daß Niemand mit ihm auskommen kann, he is of that humour that none can agree with him; ich wiederhole es, daß ich solche Menschen hasse, I repeat it that I hate such men; dieses beweiset nicht, daß ich Sie weniger liebe, this does not prove that I love you less; es thut mir leid, daß ich Ihre Schwester nicht gesehen habe, I am sorry for not having seen your sister. Daß governs the subjunctive 1) after

the verbs which express a wish, a doubt or a fear ; 2) when the verb which goes before stands in the conditional present or past. Examples : *ich wünsche, daß ich Sie auf dem Balle tanzen sehen könnte*, I wish I could see you dance at the ball ; *ich wünsche, daß er sich in Acht nähme*, I wish he would take care ; *ich zweifle nicht, daß sie es thun werde*, I question not, but she will do it ; *ich dachte immer, daß es noch am Ende dazu kommen würde*, I thought always it would come at last to that ; *er fürchtete, daß er deswegen gestraft werden würde*, he was afraid of being punished for it ; *würde man glauben, daß es möglich wäre ?* would one think it was possible ? *Daß* is also sometimes omitted. For instance : *immer hoffte er noch, sein Vater werde ihn besuchen*, instead of *daß ihn sein Vater besuchen werde*, he was still in hopes that his father would pay him a visit ; *er fürchtete, er möchte ihn schlagen*, he was afraid, that he might beat him.

X. *Damit* governs always the subjunctive. Examples : *er thut seine Schuldigkeit bloß, damit er deswegen gelobt werden könne*, he does his duty only that he may be praised for it.

XI. *Daß nicht, damit nicht*. Nehmen Sie sich in Acht, daß or damit Sie Ihr Brod nicht verlieren, take care lest you lose your living,

XII. *Wenn, wofern*. Wenn (wofern) Sie zu rechter Zeit kommen, so wollen wir zusammen gehen ; wo nicht, so muß ich allein gehen, if you come in good time, we will go together, if not, I must go by myself ; wir müssen immer die Wahrheit sagen, wenn wir von Andern geliebt und geachtet zu werden wünschen, we must always tell the truth, if we wish to be beloved and respected by others ; ich würde besser deutsch sprechen, wenn ich weniger fürchte,

ham wäre, I should speak better German, if I was less timorous; hätte er nicht dieses schreckliche Schicksal vermeiden können, wenn er die Wahrheit gesagt hätte? would he not have avoided this dreadful fate, if he had told the truth? wenn ich nur nicht dort seyn müßte, if I were only not obliged to be there; wenn er etwa die Schlacht verlieren sollte, if peradventure he should lose the battle.

Wenn may be entirely omitted, but this omission occasions an inversion (eine Umstellung) in the phrase. Example: hätte der Landmann den Pflug und den Ochsen nicht, so würde er mit einer Hacke das Feld umarbeiten müssen, instead of: wenn der Landmann den Pflug und den Ochsen nicht hätte etc., if the countryman had not the plough and the ox, he would be obliged to break up the field with a hough.

Wenn is not to be confounded with wann, which is an adverb of time: ich werde ihm schreiben, wann Sie gegenwärtig sind, I shall write to him, when you are present.

XIII. Dafern. Dafern es wahr ist, was Sie sagen, so will ich das Geld vorschießen, provided it be true, what you say, I'll advance the money.

XIV. Ob. Entweder — oder. Es liegt nichts daran, ob ihr mein Freund seid oder nicht, 'tis no matter whether you are my friend or not; entweder arbeiten Sie, oder gehen Sie Ihren Weg, either work or be gone.

XV. Aber, allein. Sondern. Ich bin hier gewesen, aber nicht dort, I have been here, but not there; sie war jung, allein häßlich, she was young but ugly; der Zweck seiner Reisen war nicht, seinen Geist mit Gelehrsamkeit anzufüllen, sondern Menschen zu studiren, the end of his travels was not to stock his mind with learning, but to study mankind; Gott ist kein unerbittlicher Richter, sondern ein

verzeihender Vater, God is no inexorable judge, but a father who forgives.

Aber is not always placed in the beginning of the phrase. Thus they say: was soll ich aber thun? but what shall I do? But allein and sonderu are always placed in the beginning of the phrase.

XVI. Doch, dennoch, gleichwohl. Sie ist häßlich, und doch liebt er sie, she is ugly and yet he loves her; sie hat Unrecht gethan, dennoch will ich ihr vergeben, she has done me wrong, yet I will forgive her; mein Rath war zu seinem Besten, gleichwohl befolgte er ihn nicht, my advice was for his good, yet he did not follow it.

XVII. Obgleich, obschon, ungeachtet, miewohl. The two words, out of which the two first conjunctions consist, are parted, when the nominative of the phrase is not a personal pronoun, the subject or nominative of the phrase being placed between them both. Examples: ob er gleich mußte, daß sie ihn haßte; so bestand er gleichwohl darauf, sie zu heirathen, tho' he knew she hated him, yet he insisted upon marrying her; ob Sie schon älter sind als er; so zweifle ich doch, ob Sie so gelehrt sind, though you be older than he, yet I doubt whether you are so learned; obgleich sein Vorschlag einigen Widerstand fand etc., though his proposition met with some opposition etc.; ungeachtet Sie es läugnen; so weiß ich dennoch, daß es wahr ist, tho' you deny it, yet I know it to be true; miewohl er selbst ein schönes Gut besitzt; so will ich ihm doch einen Theil des meinigen abtreten, tho' he has a good estate of his own, yet I'll resign part of mine to him.

XVIII. So — auch. Je nachdem. So groß er auch seyn mag, as great as he may be. We see from this example, that the adjective is placed directly after so, then,

comes the nominative and the word auch, and lastly the verb. Je nachdem ich es finden werde, according as I shall find it.

XIX. Weder — noch. Sie wissen weder seine Geduld, noch seine Großmuth nachzuahmen, they know to imitate neither his patience nor generosity ; sein Reichthum machte ihn weder unhöflich, noch nachlässig, his riches made him neither incivil nor negligent.

XX. Als, da. Als er ihn erblickte ; lief er fort, when he perceived him, he ran away ; er war noch sehr jung, als seine Aeltern starben, he was yet very young, when his parents died ; da (or als) er einige Zeit darauf von seinem Vetter einen Besuch erhielt ; so fragte er ihn, was Unmäßigkeit bedeutete, some time after receiving a visit from his cousin, he asked him what intemperance signified. It appears from this last example, that als and da are frequently used in German, where the participles are employed in English.

XXI. Indem. Nachdem. Ehe. So bald, so bald als. Indem ich davon sprach, whilst I was speaking of it ; indem ich dieses sagte, whilst I was saying this ; nachdem wir Alles wohl untersucht hatten, after having well examined every thing ; ehe die Glocke ausgeschlagen hat, before the clock has done striking ; ehe Sie zurückkommen, before you come back ; ich kannte ihn, sobald ich ihn sah, I knew him as soon as I saw him ; so bald als es vier geschlagen hat, as soon as it has struck four

XXII. Während, so lange. Während dieses vorging, while this was transacting ; der Spött ist nicht länger angenehm, als so lange die ganze Gesellschaft Wohlgefallen daran findet, raillery is no longer agreeable than while the whole company is pleased with it ; so lange er sich in den

Schranken der Bescheidenheit hielt, war ich sein aufrichtigster Freund, while he kept himself within the bounds of modesty, I was his sincerest friend,

Exercise.

He is not only a poet, but also an historian. He resolved always to follow his advice, because he saw that it was for his good. Let me leave this town, since neither my love to you nor the force of reason can persuade you, that you render yourself unhappy. Wherefore you may believe me, that I am in the right. I wish you had done it. If grief for my loss had not rendered me insensible to all pleasures, I should have partaken in the rejoicings of

the poet, der Dichter, 1.

the historian, der Geschichtschreiber, 1.

to resolve, sich vornehmen.

the advice, der Rath, 2.

to follow, zu befolgen.

it, er.

for, zu.

the good, das Beste, 3.

let me, lassen sie mich.

the town, die Stadt, 4.

to leave, verlassen.

to, zu.

the force, die Macht, 4.

reason, die Vernunft, 4.

to persuade, überzeugen.

you, Sie.

ourselves, sich.

unhappy, unglücklich.

to render, machen.

to may, können.

to believe one, einem glauben.

to be in the right, Recht haben.

to wish, wünschen.

to do, thun.

grief, der Kummer, 1.

for, über, (accus.)

the loss, der Verlust, 2. (in the plur. die Verluste).

insensible, unempfindlich.

to, gegen.

the pleasure, die Freude,

4.

in, an, (dat).

your family. You may go to town, provided you promise to return as soon as possible. Though he loves every man, yet all his neighbours take him for a man-hater. This happened, when Leo X. reigned Pope of Rome. Being lately at the play, I saw the mourning Bride represented. We were all happy, while the father of the now king reigned. It will not be otherwise, while the world lasts.

the rejoicing, die Lustbarkeit,	to happen, geschehen.
4.	Pope of Rome, als Pabst
the family, die Familie, 4.	(2.) zu Rom.
to partake, Antheil nehmen.	to reign, regieren.
to town, in die Stadt.	lately, neulich.
to promise, versprechen.	at, in, (accus.)
to return, zurückkommen.	the play, das Schauspiel, 2.
every man, Jedermann.	the mourning Bride, die
to take, halten.	Brant in Trauer.
the neighbours, die Nachbarn.	represented, aufführen.
for, für.	happy, glücklich.
a man-hater, ein Menschenfeind, 2.	now, jetzt.
	to last, (währen) stehen.

CHAPTER XX.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

The interjections (die Zwischen- or Empfindungswörter) may be classed according to the different passions, the emotions of which they express. Some of them express

joy, such as *ha! ha! ha! heisa! juchhei!* Others express sorrow or distress, such as *ach! alas!* Others serve to express astonishment or admiration, such as *poß tausend!* Others are used in order to express an aversion, such as *pfui! fie! weg! away! weg damit! away with it!* Others are employed in order to inspire with courage, such as *wohlan! come on! auf! up!* There are some, which command silence, such as *still! hush! st! hist!*

Exercise.

Alas! how wretched I am! ¹ it is all over with me. But, good! good! why do you exclaim thus? Alas! I have been robbed of my gold watch and of all my money. ² Curse upon that rascal! If I catch him, I will murder him without mercy. I am quite mad. For God's sake, compose yourself. For it was I, who took your watch and your purse, that you might lock your door better another time, when you go out. Is it possible! O how glad I am, to find them again! How! you have taken my watch and my money. Yes, here they are. I found them on your chimney.

wretched, unglücklich.

¹ es ist um mich geschehen.

to do exclaim, ausrufen.

thus, so.

I have been, man hat mir.

to rob, stehlen. The accusa-

tive must be put in German.

gold, golden.

of all my money, mein ganzes Geld.

² Fluch, diesem Spitzbuben! to catch, erwischen.

without mercy, ohne Barmherzigkeit.

to murder, umbringen.

mad, rasend.

for God's sake, um Gottes willen.

to compose one's self, sich beruhigen.

it was I, ich war es.

the purse, der Beutel, 1.	when, wann.
to take, nehmen.	to go out, ausgehen.
that, damit.	possible, möglich.
another time, ein anderes Mal.	glad, froh.
the door, die Thüre, 4.	again, wieder.
to lock, verschließen.	here they are, hier sind sie.
to may, mögen.	on, auf, (dat.)
	the chimney, der Kamin, 2.

CHAPTER XXI.

OF PUNCTUATION.

Punctuation (die Zeichenlehre) points out in writing and printing the places of the speech, where a stop must be made, not only in order to facilitate the reading of what had been written, but also in order to determine exactly the meaning of it.

The following marks are used to this purpose : the comma (der Beistrich); the colon (der Doppelpunkt); the semicolon (der Strichpunkt); the full stop (der Punkt); the note of interrogation (das Fragezeichen); the note of admiration (das Ausrufungszeichen); the mark of allegation (das Anführungszeichen); the parenthesis (das Einschließungszeichen); the dash (der Gedankenstrich); the division (das Theilungszeichen); the joining note or hyphen (das Bindezeichen); the apostrophe (das Auslassungszeichen).

The comma (,) is placed :

1. In order to distinguish the shorter members of a phrase or of a period. For instance : Es hält sehr schwer,

den gemeinen Leuten ihre Vorurtheile zu benehmen. It is very hard to remove the prejudices of the common people.

2. Before and after an inserted word or phrase. For instance: Heinrich der Vierte, König von Frankreich, war der erste unter den Königen aus dem Hause Bourbon. Henry the fourth, king of France, was the first of the kings of the house of Bourbon.

3. Before all relative pronouns. For instance: Gott ist es, der uns glücklich macht, dessen helfende Hand uns der Gefahr entzieht. It is God, who makes us happy, whose helping hand delivers us from danger.

4. Before the conjunctions als and daß. For instance: Die Sonne war schon aufgegangen, als ich erwachte. The sun had already risen, when I awoke.

5. After substantives and adjectives, when they are not united by und or oder. For instance: Es giebt vier Jahreszeiten, nämlich: Frühling, Sommer, Herbst und Winter. There are four seasons, to wit: spring, summer, autumn and winter.

When und and oder connect whole phrases and have their particular verb, they receive also a comma. For instance: Ein wahrhaft aufgeklärtes Volk verletzt das Völkerrecht nicht, und entheiligt den Namen Gottes nicht durch feierliche Meineide. A truly enlightened people violates not the law of nations, and profanes not the name of God by solemn perjuries.

6. Before sondern auch. For instance: Aeltern, die ihren Kindern eine gute Erziehung geben, sind nicht nur gerecht, sondern auch fromm. Parents who bestow a good education on their children are not only just but pious too.

The colon (:) is placed:

1. At the end of the first principal part of a period, when this first part is composed of two or more members,

2. When we define a thing, or enumerate more things. For instance: Eine Woche besteht aus sieben Tagen, welche heißen: Sonntag, Montag, Dienstag, Mittwoch, Donnerstag, Freitag und Sonnabend. A week consists of seven days, which are called: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday.

3. When we quote our own words, or the speech of another. For instance: Als ich ihn sah, sagte ich zu ihm: verlieren Sie den Muth nicht. When I saw him, I said to him: don't lose courage.

The semicolon (;) is used:

1. At the end of the first principal part of a period, when this first part is only composed of one member.

2. After each single member of a period.

3. Before the words aber, allein, denn, doch, dennoch, indeffen, hingegen etc.

The full stop (.) is placed at the end of phrases and periods. For instance: Die wahre Philosophie ist keine verzehrende Flamme; sie ist ein mildes und wohlthätiges Licht. True philosophy is not a consuming flame, it is a gentle and beneficent light.

The note of interrogation (?) is put after a question. For instance: Wie befindet sich Ihre Schwester? How is your sister? The note of interrogation is omitted, when a question is only quoted by way of telling. For instance: Als ich nach Hause kam, fragte er mich, wo ich gewesen wäre. When I came home, he asked me where I had been.

The note of admiration (!) is put in phrases which express an admiration or exclamation. For instance: Was sehe ich! Ein schwarzes Siegel! What do I see! A black seal! Some phrases which are quite the same have sometimes a note of interrogation, and sometimes a note of

admiration, according as the sense requires the one or the other. For instance: Wann werden unsere Leiden endigen? O Gott! wann werden unsere Leiden endigen! When will our misfortunes have an end? O God! when will our misfortunes have an end! In the first case we ask a question; but in the second case we are surprised at the duration of our misfortunes.

The mark of allegation („—“) is used, when we alledge the words of another. For instance: Heinrich der Vierte erblickte eines Tages einen Menschen, der in einem Vorzimmer des königlichen Schlosses herumging; seine Miene versprach nichts Ausgezeichnetes. Er ging auf ihn zu, und fragte ihn, wem er angehörte. „Ich bin mein eigener Herr,” antwortete der Fremde in einem stolzen und trotigen Tone. „Führwahr desto schlimmer, erwiderte der französische Monarch mit Lebhaftigkeit; denn Sie haben einen albernen Herrn bekommen.” Henry IV. perceived one day a man walking in an antichamber of the royal palace; his appearance did not betray any marks of distinction. He went up to him, and asked him to whom he belonged. „I am my own master,” replied the stranger in a haughty and insolent manner. „So much the worse indeed, returned the French monarch with vivacity; for you have got a silly master.”

A parenthesis () is an inserted phrase included in crotchets. For instance: Ihr Bruder ist ein schlechter Mensch; allein (zu Ihrem Lobe muß es gesagt werden) Sie sind ein ganz anderer Mensch. Your brother is a bad man; but (in your praise it must be said) you are quite another man.

The dash (—) is used. in order to indicate the omission of one or more words, or in order to raise the attention of the reader. For instance: Obgleich auf unserer Pilgrimschaft durch diese Welt einige von uns so glücklich seyn ma-

gen, eine klare Quelle am Wege zu finden, welche für wenige Augenblicke die Hitze ihres großen Durstes nach Glückseligkeit abkühlen kann—so sagt unser Heiland, welcher die Welt kannte, ungeachtet er nur Weniges von ihr genoß, und dennoch, daß Jeder, welcher von diesem Wasser trinkt, wieder dursten werde :—und wir alle lernen durch Erfahrung, daß es so ist, und durch Veruunst, daß es immer so seyn muß. Tho' in our pilgrimage through this world some of us may be so fortunate as to meet with some clear fountain by the way, that may cool for a few moments the heat of their great thirst of happiness—yet our Saviour, who knew the world, tho' he enjoyed but little of it, tells us that whosoever drinks of this water will thirst again :—and we all find by experience it is so, and by reason it always must be so.

The division (s) is employed, when a word is parted at the end of a line.

The joining note or hyphen (s) is used, in order to shew that the word terminates in the same manner as the subsequent one. For instance : der Ein- und Ausgang, the entrance and exit ; auf- und zuschließen, to open and shut.

The apostrophe (') indicates the omission of an e ; as : Gott ist's (instead of ist es), dem wir unser Leben verdanken, it is God, to whom we owe our life. When two letters are omitted, the apostrophe is not used ; as : auf's (instead of auf das) beste, in the best manner.

When the speech is broken off, they use this mark : . . . , or . . . , or — — —. For instance : Ein sterbender Vater sagte zu seinen Kindern : nie liebte ein Vater seine Kinder mehr . . . hier hielt er inne, ließ eine Thräne fallen, und fuhr dann fort. A dying father said to his children : never father loved his children better — — — he made a stop here, dropt a tear, and then proceeded.

CHAPTER-XXII.

Some easy German exercises, in order to be translated from the German into English.

I.

Ein Richter ließ einen Färber seine Hand aufheben, und da die Färber gemeiniglich schwarze Hände haben; so sagte er zu ihm: mein Freund, ziehen Sie Ihren Handschuh aus. Mein Herr, erwiderte der Färber, setzen Sie Ihre Brille auf.

ein Richter, 1. a judge.

aufheben lassen, to cause to lift up.

ein Färber. 1. a dier.

da, as.

gemeiniglich, commonly.

schwarz, black.

sagen, to say.

zu, to.

ausziehen, to take off.

der Handschuh, 2. the glove.

mein Herr, Sir.

erwidern, to reply.

aufsetzen, to put on.

die Brille, 4. the spectacles.

II.

Ein Herr sagte einst zu einem Minister: ein König kann nicht Alles mit seinen eigenen Augen sehen, und darum hat er Minister. Aber ich bedaure den Minister eines Königs,

ein Herr, a gentleman.

einst, once.

ein Minister, 1. a minister.

können, to can.

Alles, every thing.

eigen, own.

darum, for that reason.

bedauern, to pity.

gar nichts, not any thing at all.

der gar nichts sieht. Eine Hofdame, welche gegenwärtig war, machte eine Bemerkung, die ihren Beifall verdiente. Ein König, sagte sie zu ihnen, welcher sich einbildet, er sehe Alles, sieht nichts. Geben Sie ihm einen guten Minister, und er bekommt bald einen Feind. Wenn seine Diener treu sind; so wird er sie für Schurken ansehen, und ein Schmeichler, der die Wahrheit vor ihm verbirgt, ist ein rechtschaffener Mann in seinen Augen.

eine Hofdame, 4. a court-lady.

gegenwärtig, present.

machen, to make.

eine Bemerkung, 4. an observation.

der Beifall, 2. the approbation.

verdienen, to deserve.

sich einbilden, to imagine.

er sehe, he sees.

er bekommt (literally; he receives), he will have.

der Diener, 1. the servant.

treu, faithful.

für, for.

ein Schurke, 3. a rascal.

ansehen, to take,

ein Schmeichler, 1. a flatterer.

die Wahrheit, 4. the truth.

vor, from.

verbergen, to conceal.

rechtschaffen, honest.

III.

Verlange etwas von mir sagte der berühmte Alexander zum armen Diogenes, welcher in seinem Fasse lag, das ihm anstatt eines Hauses diente. Nein, erwiederte der Snyiker,

verlangen, to request.

etwas, something.

von, of.

berühmt, famous.

arm, poor.

das Faß, 5. the tub.

liegen, to be lying.

ihm, him.

anstatt, instead.

dienen, to serve.

langen Halse, die mit Fleisch und anderer Speise angefüllt war, welche der Storch mit seinem langen Schnabel ohne Mühe herausziehen konnte. Der Fuchs aber beleckte den Hals der Flasche vergebens. Nimm es nicht übel, sagte der Storch zum Fuchse beim Abschiednehmen; es ist sehr billig, daß ich dir Gleiches mit Gleichem vergelten mußte.

ein langer Hals, 2. a long

neck.

die angefüllt war, filled.

das Fleisch, 2. the meat.

die Speise, 4. the food.

der Schnabel, 1. the beak.

ohne Mühe, easily.

herausziehen, to extract.

der Fuchs aber, with respect
to the fox.

belecken, to lick.

vergebens, to no purpose.

es übel nehmen, to take it

amiss.

beim Abschiednehmen, at tak-
ing her leave.

sehr billig, very just.

dir, you.

einem Gleiches mit Gleichem
vergeltten, to serve one the
same turn.

mußte, should.

VI.

Mein Sohn, sagte ein Vater, welcher auf seinem Tod-
bette lag, zu seinem Sohne, wie glücklich stirbe ich, wenn
ich mir schmeicheln könnte, daß Du nach meinem Tode
glücklich seyn würdest! Hier ist mein Testament. Sobald
als Du die letzte Pflicht gegen mich erfüllt hast; öffne es,

auf, on.

das Todbett, 2. the death-
bed.

liegen, to be lying.

wie, how.

glücklich, happy.

sterben, to die.

ich schmeichle mir, I flatter
myself.

Du thou.

nach, after.

der Tod, 2. the death.

hier ist, here is.

das Testament, 2. or der
letzte Wille, 3. the will.
Wille has in the genitive
des Willens, and in the
dative dem Willen.

und thue Alles, was in Deiner Macht stehet, um es treu zu vollziehen. Deine Glückseligkeit hängt davon ab. Versprich mir, meinen letzten Willen nicht aus der Acht zu lassen, und ich sterbe zufrieden. Bald nach des Vaters Tode wurde das Testament geöffnet. Der Sohn fand darin die Worte: Mein Sohn, wünsche nur das, was Du haben kannst, und vergiß nicht, daß die wahre Glückseligkeit in der Tugend besteht.

so bald als, as soon as.
die letzte Pflicht gegen Jes-
manden erfüllen, to pay
the last duties to some-
body.

öffnen, to open.
ich thue Alles, was in mei-
ner Macht stehet, I do all
in my power.

um zu, to.
treu, faithfully.
vollziehen, to execute.
die Glückseligkeit, 4. the
happiness.

hängt davon ab, depends
upon that.
versprechen, to promise.
der letzte Wille, the last
will.

aus der Acht lassen, to ne-
glect.

zufrieden, content.
darin, therein.
wünschen, to desire.
das, was, that which.
vergessen, to forget.
wahr, true.

die Tugend, 4. virtue.
bestehen, to consist.

VII.

Karl der Zwölfte hätte ein wahrhaft großer Mann werden können, wenn er richtigere Begriffe von wahrer Größe gehabt hätte. Er war viel großmüthiger als sein berühmter Feind der Czar Peter der Erste, welcher im Grunde ein grausamer und rachsüchtiger Monarch war. Doch wird der Name dieses letztern immer merkwürdig seyn, weil er

einen gewissen Sinn für das Wahre und Große hatte. Dieser war die Ursache der zahlreichen und nützlichen Verbesserungen, welche er in seinen weitläufigen Staaten einführte, und welche Rußland von dem wilden Zustande befreiten, in welchen es gesunken war.

Karl, Charles.

hätte werden können, might
have become.

wahrhaft, truly.

richtig, just.

der Begriff, 2. the idea.

von, of.

die Größe, 4. the greatness.

viel, much.

großmüthig, generous.

im Grunde, at the bottom.

grausam, cruel.

rachfüchtig, vindictive.

doch, however.

der Name, 3. (genit. des
Namens) the name.

immer, always.

merkwürdig, remarkable.

weil, because.

gewiß, certain.

ein Sinn für das Wahre
und Große, a sense for
what is true and great.

die Ursache, 4. the reason.

zahlreich, numerous.

nützlich, useful.

die Verbesserung, 4. the im-
provement.

in, into.

weitläufig, extensive.

der Staat, 2. (plur. die
Staaten) the dominion.

einführen, to introduce.

Rußland, Russia.

von, from.

wild, savage.

der Zustand, 2. the state.

befreien, to deliver.

in, in.

sinken, to sink.

VIII.

Ein Römer hatte sein Haus so eingerichtet, daß man Alles, was darin gethan wurde, auf der Straße sehen konnte. Dieser Mann war tugendhaft. Wir müssen uns auch bestreben gut und tugendhaft zu seyn. Dann wird

unser Herz einigermaßen dem Hause dieses Mannes ähnlich seyn. Denn dann können wir Andern zeigen, was darin vorgeht, ohne zu fürchten, die Achtung der Menschen zu verlieren. Ein Mensch, welcher immer aufrichtig ist, erwirbt sich die Freundschaft aller derer, welche ihn kennen.

ein Römer, 1. a Roman.
so, auf eine solche Art, in
such a manner.

einrichten, to lay out.

daß man Alles sehen konnte,
that every thing could be
seen.

thun, to do.

darin, in it.

auf, in.

die Straße, 4. the street.

ich muß, I must.

auch, likewise.

sich bestreben, to endeavour.

gut und tugendhaft, good
and virtuous.

dann, then.

das Herz (genit. des Her-
zens), 3. the heart.

einigermaßen, in some mea-
sure.

ähnlich seyn, to resemble.

Andere, others.

zeigen, to shew.

darin, there.

vorgehen, to pass.

ohne, without.

fürchten, to fear.

verlieren, to lose.

die Achtung, 4. the esteem.

aufrichtig, sincere.

sich erwerben, to acquire.

die Freundschaft, 4. the
friendship.

alle die, all these.

kennen, to know.

XI.

Ein Bischof, welcher in der Fastenzeit predigte, sah den Herzog von Gaston Orleans zwischen zwei Generalpächtern sitzen. Ach! Herr, rief er in einem pathetischen Tone aus, indem er einen Seitenblick auf den Prinzen warf, ich sehe dich zwischen zwei Dieben! Die Zuhörer konnten sich bei diesem zweideutigen Ausrufe des Lachens

nicht enthalten, so daß der Herzog, welcher eingeschlafen war, aufwachte, und fragte, was es gäbe. Ach! nichts, gnädiger Herr, antwortete einer von den Generalpächtern kaltblütig, es ist gar nichts. ¹ Man macht sich bloß ein wenig auf meine und meines Collegen Kosten lustig. Schlafen Sie ruhig.

ein Bischof, 2. a bishop.
in der Fastenzeit, in lent.
predigen, to be preaching.
der Herzog, 2. the duke.
von, of.
zwischen, between.
der Generalpächter, 1. the
farmer general.
sitzen, seated.
ach! alas!
Herr, Lord.
ausrufen, to exclaim, to cry.
in einem pathetischen Tone,
in a pathetic strain.
indem er warf, casting.
ein Seitenblick, 2. a side-
glance.
auf, towards.
der Prinz, 3. the prince.
sehen, to see.
dich, thee.
der Dieb, 2. the thief.
die Zuhörer, the auditory.
bei, at.
zweideutig, equivocal.

der Ausruf, 2. the exclama-
tion.
ich kann mich des Lachens
nicht enthalten, I cannot
forbear laughing.
so daß, so that.
eingeschlafen seyn, to be
asleep.
aufwachen, to awake.
sich erkundigen, fragen, to
enquire.
was es gäbe, what was the
matter.
Ach! pugh!
gnädiger Herr, my lord.
antworten, to reply.
einer, one.
von, of.
kaltblütig, ruhig, calmly.
gar nichts, nothing at all.
¹ They are only making
themselves merry a little
at my and my colleague's
expence.
² Take your rest quietly.

CHAPTER XXIII.

SOME FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

Einige im gemeinen Leben vorkommende
Gespräche.

FIRST DIALOGUE.

Different questions and answers.

Erstes Gespräch.

Verschiedene Fragen und Antworten.

Wie befinden Sie sich, mein Herr?	How do you do, Sir?
Ich befinde mich sehr wohl, Gott Lob.	I am very well, God be praised.
Wie befindet sich Ihr Herr Bruder?	How does your brother do?
Ich glaube, er befindet sich wohl.	I believe he is well.
Wie befindet sich Ihre Frau Mutter?	How is your mother?
Sie befindet sich nicht wohl. Sie ist krank.	She is not well. She is sick.
Ich bin traurig darüber.	I am very sorry for it.
Wie steht es um Ihre Gesundheit?	How is it with your health?
Wie befinden Sie sich diesen Morgen?	How do you find yourself this morning?

Sehr wohl, Gott sey Dank.

Ich bin sehr erfreut darüber.

Ich danke Ihnen herzlich.

Wie haben Sie sich befunden, seitdem ich Sie nicht gesehen habe?

Nicht sehr wohl.

Ueberaus wohl.

Ich freue mich sehr, daß ich Sie bei guter Gesundheit sehe.

Ich bin Ihnen verbunden.

Wie befindet sich Ihre Frau Gemahlin?

Wie befindet sich Ihre Fräulein Tochter?

Sie befindet sich wohl.

Ich freue mich darüber.

Wo ist sie?

Zu Hause.

In der Stadt.

Auf dem Lande.

Sie ist ausgegangen.

Wo gehen Sie hin?

Wo kommen Sie her?

Ist er Ihr Freund? Ist sie Ihre Freundin?

Kennen Sie ihn?

Ich kenne ihn nicht.

Er verheirathet sich.

Er hat sich eben verheirathet.

Er ist Wittwer. Sie ist Wittwe.

Seit wann?

Er ist ein Spieler.

Desto schlimmer.

Das ist traurig.

Werden Sie ins Schauspiel gehen?

Haben Sie eine Loge bekommen?

Very well, thank God.

I am very glad of it.

I thank you heartily.

How have you done since I saw you last?

Not very well.

Extremely well.

I am very glad to see you in a good health.

I am obliged to you.

How is your lady?

How does your daughter do?

She is well.

I rejoice at it.

Where is she?

At home.

In town.

In the country.

She is gone out.

Where are you going to?

Where do you come from?

Is he your friend? Is she your friend?

Do you know him?

I don't know him.

He is going to be married.

He is just married.

He is a widower. She is a widow.

How long since?

He is a gamester.

So much the worse.

That is unfortunate.

Will you go to the play?

Have you got a box?

Werden Sie in das Concert
gehen?

Ist der Saal groß und
schön?

Werden Sie auf den Ball
gehen?

Sind Sie auf dem Balle
gewesen?

Lieben Sie die Musik?

Wie gefällt Ihnen diese
Musik?

Mir dünkt, sie ist sehr schön.

Lieben Sie den Tanz?

Tanzt sie gut? Singt sie
gut? Spielt sie gut auf
der Harfe oder auf dem
Pianoforte?

Können Sie ein Instrument
spielen?

Meine Schwester wird Cla-
vier spielen, und ich wer-
de Flöte blasen.

Sie hat eine schöne Stim-
me.

Wann reisen Sie ab nach
London?

Dürfte ich Sie mit einem
Brieife beschweren?

Ich will ihn Ihnen offen
übergeben, damit Sie
überzeugt seyn können,
daß er nichts enthält, was
Ihnen nachtheilig seyn
könnte.

Wann kann ich diesen Brief
schicken?

Wo soll ich ihn hinschicken?

Ich werde wiederkommen
und den Brief holen.

Er wird fertig seyn.

Ich bin sehr glücklich, daß

Will you go to the concert?

Is the hall large and fine?

Will you go to the ball?

Have you been at the ball?

Do you like music?

How do you like that music?

Me thinks 'tis very fine.

Do you like dancing?

Does she dance well? Does
she sing well? Does she
play well on the harp or
piano-forte?

Can you play upon any in-
strument?

My sister will play on the
piano-forte, and I'll play
on my flute.

She has a fine voice.

When will you set off for
London?

Might I trouble you with a
letter?

I will deliver it open to you,
that you may be convinc-
ed, that it does not con-
tain any thing prejudicial
to you.

When may I send this let-
ter?

Where shall I send it to?

I will return and fetch the
letter.

It shall be ready,

I am very happy in finding

ich eine Gelegenheit finde, Ihnen einen kleinen Dienst zu leisten.

Wollen Sie so gütig seyn und mir Ihre Adresse geben?

Wie alt sind Sie?

Ich bin vierzig Jahre alt.

Ist Ihre Frau Mutter sehr alt.

Sie ist fast neunzig Jahre alt.

Kriert Sie?

Im Gegentheile, mir ist sehr warm; aber ich bin müde.

Ruhen Sie aus.

Meine Hände sind so kalt, daß ich nicht schreiben kann.

Ich bin hungrig.

Sie sind hungrig, sagen Sie, und ich bin sehr durstig.

Ich habe einen sehr bösen Schnupfen.

Ihre Schwester hatte vergangene Woche eine böse Nase; jetzt hat sie böse Lippen; ich wünschte, sie hätte eine böse Zunge.

Ich glaube, es friert Sie stets an den Kopf; denn Sie nehmen selten Ihren Hut ab.

Wenn sie sich etwa zanken sollten, so thun Sie es mir zu wissen.

Er wäre beinahe gefallen.

Sie ließen ihn enthaupten.

Er will, daß seine Frau das liebt, was er liebt.

an opportunity of rendering you a trifling service.

Will you be so kind as to give me your direction?

How old are you?

I am forty years old?

Is your mother very old?

She is almost ninety.

Are you cold?

On the contrary, I am very warm; but I am tired.

Rest yourself

My hands are so cold that I cannot write.

I am hungry.

You are hungry you say, and I am very dry.

I have a very bad rheum.

Your sister had a sore nose last week; now she has sore lips: I wish she had a sore tongue.

I believe your head is always cold; for you seldom pull your hat off.

If they should happen to quarrel, let me know of it.

He had like to have fallen.

They caused him to be beheaded.

He will have his wife like what he does.

- Setzen Sie sich ein wenig nieder.
 Ich kann wirklich nicht.
 Sie sind sehr eilig.
 Ich komme morgen wieder.
 Bleiben Sie doch ein wenig.
 Wollen Sie sobald gehen?
 Ich habe dringende Geschäfte.
 Ich habe dringende Ursachen dazu.
 Ich muß nach Hause zurückkehren.
 Ich kam bloß, um zu wissen, wie Sie sich befänden.
 Wann werde ich Sie wiedersehen?
 Um wie viel Uhr? Welchen Tag? Des Morgens oder des Abends?
 Wollen Sie mit mir zu Mittag, zu Abende essen?
 Es ist mir unmöglich; es thut mir sehr leid, ich verabschiede Sie.
 Empfehlen Sie mich Ihrer Fräulein Schwester.
 Versichern Sie Ihre Frau Mutter von meinem ehrfurchtsvollen Andenken.
 Ich werde nicht ermangeln.
 Sprechen Sie Deutsch?
 Ich spreche es ein wenig.
 Ich verstehe es besser, als ich es sprechen kann.
 Sie müssen einen Sprachlehrer nehmen.
 Verstehen Sie mich?
 Habe ich richtig ausgesprochen?
- Sit down a little.
 Indeed I cannot.
 You are in great haste.
 I'll come again to morrow.
 Pray, stay a little.
 Will you be gone so soon?
 I have earnest business.
 I have pressing reasons for it.
 I must return home.
 I only came to know how you did.
 When shall I see you again?
 At what o'clock? what day?
 In the morning or evening?
 Will you dine, sup with me?
 It is impossible for me; I am very sorry for it, I assure you.
 Give my compliments to your sister.
 Assure your mother of my respectful remembrance.
 I shall not fail.
 Do you speak German?
 I speak it a little.
 I understand it better than I can speak it.
 You must take a language-master.
 Do you understand me?
 Did I pronounce right?

Wie nennen Sie das auf Deutsch?	How do you call that in German?
Die Aussprache des Deutschen ist viel leichter, als die des Englischen.	The pronounciation of the German is much easier than that of the English.
Und dennoch wird die Erlernung der deutschen Sprache den Engländern sehr schwer.	And yet the German language is very hard for Englishmen to learn.

SECOND DIALOGUE.

Before going to bed.

Zweites Gespräch.

Wie man zu Bette geht.

Die Nacht nähert sich.	Night comes on.
Es wird Nacht.	It grows night.
Es fängt an finster zu werden.	It begins to grow dark.
Es ist sehr spät.	It is very late.
Es ist Zeit zu Bette zu gehen.	It is time to go to bed.
Sie kommen sehr spät nach Hause.	You come home very late.
Ich gehe zeitig zu Bette.	I go to bed betimes.
Das Bett ist kalt.	The bed is cold.
Lassen Sie es wärmen.	Get it warmed.
Wo ist die Wärmepanne?	Where is the warming pan?
Ich will zu Bette gehen.	I will go to bed.
Sitzen Sie so lange auf als Sie wollen.	Sit up as long as you will.
Sie sind sehr verschlafen.	You are a sleepy fellow.
Gute Nacht.	Good night.
Ich wünsche Ihnen eine gute Nacht.	I wish you a good night.

Ich wünsche Ihnen eine ruhige Nacht.	I wish you a good night's rest.
Haben Sie mir gebettet?	Have you made my bed?
Ist mein Bett gemacht?	Is my bed made?
Es ist schlecht gebettet.	The bed is ill made.
Machen Sie das Bett noch einmal.	Make the bed up again.
Schütteln Sie das Federbett auf.	Beat up the featherbed.
Ziehen Sie die Vorhänge herunter.	Draw the curtains.
Geben Sie mir eine Schlafmütze.	Give me a nightcap.
Setzen Sie sie doch auf.	Pray, put it on.
Kleiden Sie sich aus.	Undress yourself.
Ziehen Sie Ihre Schuhe und Strümpfe aus.	Pull off your shoes and stockings.
Helfen Sie mir meinen Rock ausziehen.	Help me to pull off my coat.
Holen Sie sogleich das Licht.	Fetch the candle directly.
Nehmen Sie das Licht weg.	Take the candle away.
Lassen Sie das Licht da.	Leave the candle there.
Ich lese gern im Bette.	I am fond of reading in bed.
Löschen Sie das Licht aus.	Put out the candle.
Ich werde es auslöschen.	I'll put it out.
Gehen Sie in Ihr Zimmer.	Go into your room.

THIRD DIALOGUE.

On rising in the morning.

Drittes Gespräch.

Wenn man des Morgens früh aufsteht.

Wer ist da?	Who is there?
Liegen Sie noch im Bette?	Are you still in bed?

Schlafen Sie ?
 Sind Sie eingeschlafen ?
 Wachen Sie auf.
 Ich bin aufgewacht.
 Wer hat Sie geweckt ?
 Mein Bruder.
 Stehen Sie auf.
 Auf ! Auf !
 Ist es Zeit aufzustehen ?
 Es ist heller Tag.
 Es ist acht Uhr.
 Machen Sie die Thüre auf.
 Sie ist zugeschlossen.
 Sie ist verriegelt.
 Warten Sie ein wenig.
 Ich stehe eben auf.
 Ich stehe auf.

Do you sleep ?
 Are you asleep ?
 Awake.
 I am awake.
 Who has waked you ?
 My brother.
 Rise.
 Up ! get up !
 Is it time to rise ?
 It is broad day.
 It is eight o'clock.
 Open the door.
 It is locked.
 It is bolted.
 Wait a little.
 I am going to rise.
 I am rising.

FOURTH DIALOGUE.

On dressing.

Viertes Gespräch.

Wenn man sich ankleidet.

Ich muß mich hurtig ankleiden.
 Was suchen Sie ?
 Ich suche meine Beinkleider.
 Wollen Sie Ihren Schlafrock haben ?
 Ja, und meine Strümpfe.
 Welche ?
 Geben Sie mir die seidenen Strümpfe.

I must take haste in dressing myself.
 What are you seeking ?
 I seek my breeches.
 Will you have your night-gown ?
 Yes, and my stockings.
 Which ?
 Give me the silk stockings.

Geben Sie mir meine
Strumpfbänder.

Give me my garters.

Geben Sie mir meine Pantoffeln.

Give me my slippers.

Geben Sie mir das Wasch-
becken und ein wenig Seife.

Give me the bason and a
little soap.

Geben Sie mir das Hand-
tuch.

Give me the towel.

Wo ist mein Hemd?

Where is my shirt?

Hier ist es.

Here it is.

Geben Sie mir ein Schnupf-
tuch.

Give me a handkerchief.

Hier ist ein weißes.

Here is a clean one.

Geben Sie mir das Schnupf-
tuch, welches in meiner
Rocktasche ist.

Give me the handkerchief
which is in my coat pocket.

Ich habe es der Wäscherin
gegeben; es war schmutzig.

I have given it to the laun-
dress, it was dirty.

Sie haben wohl gethan.

You have done well.

Hat sie meine Wäsche ge-
bracht?

Has she brought my linen?

Ja, mein Herr, es fehlt
nichts daran.

Yes Sir, there is nothing
wanting.

Geben Sie mir meine Schu-
he.

Give me my shoes.

Ich muß sie erst abwischen.

I must first wipe them.

Lassen Sie meine Schuhe
sticken.

Get my shoes mended.

Geben Sie mir einen Kamm.

Give me a comb.

Er ist nicht rein.

It is not clean.

Wollen Sie den eifsenbeiner-
nen Kamm haben?

Will you have the ivory
comb?

Nein; sondern den hörne-
ren Kamm.

No, but the horncomb.

Es hat Jemand fünf oder
sechs Zähne aus meinem
Kamme gebrochen.

Somebody has broke five or
six teeth out of my comb.

Es klopft Jemand an die
Thüre; sehen Sie, wer
es ist.

Somebody knocks at the
door, see who it is.

Es ist der Schneider.
Lassen Sie ihn herein kommen.
meine

It is the tailor.
Let him come in.

FIFTH DIALOGUE.

Between a lady and her waiting woman.

Fünftes Gespräch.

Zwischen einer Dame und ihrer Kammerfrau.

Rufen Sie, Madam?

Ja; wie viel Uhr ist es?

Ich weiß nicht, Madam.

Sehen Sie nach meiner Uhr.

Sie geht nicht.

Sie ist abgelaufen.

Geben Sie mir sie, damit
ich sie aufziehen kann.

Hier ist sie, Madam.

Geben Sie mir mein Hemd.

Es ist nicht warm; ich werde
es gleich wärmen.

Ist ein gutes Feuer in meinem
Stübchen?

Ein sehr gutes.

Geben Sie mir mein Morgenkleid.

Hier ist es, Madam.

Geben Sie mir einen Stuhl.

Reinigen Sie meine Kammer.
me.

Sie sind rein, Madam.

Geben Sie mir meinen
Mantel.

Do you call, Madam?

Yes, what o'clock is it?

I do not know, Madam.

Look at my watch.

It does not go.

It is down.

Give it to me that I may
wind it up.

There it is, Madam.

Give me my shirt.

It is not warm; I am going
to warm it.

Is there a good fire in my
closet?

A very good one.

Give me my morning gown.

Here it is, Madam.

Give me a chair.

Clean my combs.

They are clean, Madam.

Give me my cloak.

Ich kann ihn nicht finden.

I cannot find it.

Suchen Sie ihn.

Seek it.

Ich suche ihn überall.

I am seeking it every where.

Sie lassen alle Dinge in Unordnung.

You leave all things in disorder.

Wischen Sie ein wenig diesen Spiegel ab; er ist ganz schmutzig.

Wipe that looking glass a little, it is quite dirty.

Geben Sie mir eine Stecknadel.

Give me a pin.

Hier ist das Kissen.

Here is the pincushion.

Schnüren Sie mich fest.

Lace me tight.

Wo sind meine Handtassen?

Where are my ruffles?

Geben Sie mir meine Handschuhe, meinen Fächer, meinen Hut.

Give me my gloves, my muff, my fan.

Wie gefallen ich Ihnen?

How do you like me?

Sehr gut.

Very well.

Sie sehen sehr gut aus.

You look very well.

SIXTH DIALOGUE.

To breakfast.

Sechstes Gespräch.

Um zu frühstücken.

Geben Sie mir etwas zu essen. Ich bin ganz verhungert; denn ich habe gestern Abend gar nichts gegessen.

Give me something to eat. I am quite starved, for I have eat nothing at all last night.

Sie sollen haben, was Sie verlangen, mein Herr.

Was möchten Sie gern haben? Ich will augenblicklich Kaffee und Chocolate machen lassen.

Sie wissen, ich trinke lieber Chocolate.

Diese Chocolate taugt nichts.

Sie sind sehr schwer zu befriedigen.

Ist Ihnen eine Schale Thee oder Kaffee gefällig?

Eine Schale Thee, wenn es Ihnen gefällig ist.

Der Thee ist sehr schwach.

Geben Sie mir eine Schale Kaffee; aber er muß stark seyn.

Der Kaffee ist vortreflich.

Ich muß vier Tassen haben.

Was für Weine haben Sie?

Haben Sie Rheinwein?

Geben Sie mir frische Butter und Weizenbrod.

Haben Sie Schweizer Käse, holländischen Käse, Parmesankäse?

Haben Sie Obst?

Bringen Sie mir Kirschchen, Erdbeeren, Stachelbeeren, rothe und weisse Johannisbeeren, Pflaumen, Äpfel, Birnen, Pfirsichen.

You shall have any thing you like Sir.

What would you chuse to have? I shall get coffee and chocolate made in a moment.

You know, I rather drink chocolate.

This Chocolate is good for nothing.

You are very hard to be pleased.

Do you chuse to have a cup of tea or coffee?

A cup of tea if you please.

The tea is very weak. Give me a cup of coffee; but it must be strong.

The coffee is excellent.

I want four cups.

What wines have you?

Have you Rhenish wine?

Give me some fresh butter and wheaten bread.

Have you Swiss cheese, Dutch cheese, Parmesan cheese?

Have you any fruit?

Bring me some cherries, strawberries, gooseberries, red and white currants, plums, apples, pears, peaches.

SEVENTH DIALOGUE.

At table.

Siebentes Gespräch.

Bei Tische.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Wir wollen uns zu Tische setzen. | Let us sit down to table. |
| Haben Sie keine feineren Servietten? Geben Sie sie uns. | Have you no finer napkins? Let us have them. |
| Haben Sie keine andern Gabeln? Diese Gabeln haben nur zwei Zinken. | Have you no other forks? These forks have only two prongs. |
| Haben Sie keine andern Löffel als zinnerne? | Have you no spoons besides pewter ones? |
| Geben Sie mir einen andern Teller. | Let me have another plate. |
| Nehmen Sie diese Schüssel weg. | Take that dish away. |
| Ich will dieses Rindfleisch vorschneiden. | I will carve this beef. |
| Geben Sie mir ein Messer, welches gut schneidet. | Give me a knife that cuts well. |
| Es durstet mich sehr. | I am very dry. |
| Ich habe gutes Bier. | I have some good beer. |
| Ich trinke es nicht gern; es ist zu nahrhaft. | I am not fond of it; it is too nourishing. |
| Kosten Sie doch diesen Burgunder. | Pray, taste this Burgundy, |
| Stellen Sie die Flaschen und die Gläser neben uns, wir wollen uns selbst bedienen | Place the bottles and glasses next us; we will help ourselves. |
| Wie schmeckt Ihnen dieser Wein? | How do you like that wine? |
| Bringen Sie uns Del und Essig. | Bring us some oil and vinegar. |

Dieses Del taugt nichts ;
geben Sie uns besseres.
Dieser Essig ist schwach ;
haben Sie stärkern ?

Bringen Sie uns welchen.
Darf ich Ihnen von diesem
Gerichte vorlegen ?
Was wünschen Sie ?
Was verlangen Sie ?
Sie essen nicht.
Ich habe schon genug geges-
sen.

Ich habe keinen Appetit.
Mein Appetit ist bald ge-
stillt.

Lassen Sie mich Ihr Bier
kosten.

Es schmeckt mir ziemlich
gut.

Darf ich Ihnen ein Glas
von diesem Weine anbie-
ten ?

Er ist sehr gut. Er hat viel
Feuer.

Dieser Wein ist fünfzig Jah-
re alt.

Alter Wein und alte Freun-
de sind am besten.

Ich trinke den süßen Wein
nicht gern.

Sie trinken nicht.

Ich trinke keinen Wein. Ich
trinke nie Liqueurs.

Es ist kein Brod mehr da ;
es ist kein Wasser mehr
da.

Wir brauchen mehr Teller.
Ich werde mit Ihrer Erlaub-
niß diese fette Henne vor-
schneiden.

This oil is good for nothing ;
give us some better.

This vinegar is too weak ;
have you not any stron-
ger ?

Bring us some.

May I help you to this
dish ?

What do you wish ?

What do you desire ?

You don't eat.

I have eaten enough already.

I have no stomach.

My stomach is soon staid.

Let me taste your beer.

I like it pretty well.

May I offer you a glass of
this wine.

It is very good. This is a
strong-bodied wine,

This wine is fifty years old.

Old wine and old friends
are best.

I don't like sweet wine.

You don't drink.

I don't drink any wine. I
never drink liquors.

There is no more bread ;
there is no more water.

We want more plates.

I will carve this fat hen by
your leave.

Wollen Sie so gütig seyn u.
diesen Teller weiter ge-
ben?

Befehlen Sie noch ein we-
nig?

Nein, mein Herr, ich danke
Ihnen; ich habe zur Ge-
nüge.

Seyn Sie so gütig und
rücken Sie ein wenig nach
dieser Seite zu, ich habe
nicht Platz genug.

Ich bitte Sie um Verzeih-
ung.

Es ist kein Platz übrig.

Ich will mich an einen an-
dern Tisch setzen.

Unserer sind so viele bei Ti-
sche, und wir sind so ge-
drängt an einander, daß
ich fürchte, ich werde Ih-
nen etwas beschwerlich
fallen.

Nicht im geringsten, ich ver-
sichere Sie.

Will you be so kind as to
hand about this plate?

May I help you to some
more?

No Sir, I thank you; I have
plenty.

Be so kind as to move a
little to that side, I have
not room enough.

I ask your pardon.

There is no place left.

I will sit at another table.

There are so many of us
at table, and we are so
crowded together, that I
am afraid I shall put you
to some inconvenience.

Not in the least, I assure
you.

EIGHTH DIALOGUE.

On letter-writing.

Achtes Gespräch.

Vom Brieffschreiben.

Ich möchte gern schreiben.
Bringen Sie mir Papier,
Federn, Linte und Sie-
gellack.

I want to write.
Bring me some paper, pens,
ink and sealing-wax.

Lassen Sie mich diese Federn verbessern.

Können Sie Federn schneiden?

Wie haben Sie sie gern? wollen Sie sie fein oder grob geschnitten haben?

Weder fein, noch grob. Ich habe sie gern sehr fein, sehr grob.

Sind sie Ihnen so recht?

Geben Sie mir ein Federmesser. Ich will eine Feder verbessern.

Dieses Federmesser taugt nichts.

Wo ist das Tintenfaß?

Wo ist die Streusandbüchse?

Holen Sie mir Sand.

Wollen Sie feinen Sand oder Goldstaub haben?

Haben Sie ein Petschaft?

Holen Sie mir eins.

Hier ist das meinige.

Zünden Sie ein Licht an; denn ich muß meine Briefe zusiegeh.

Ist das Posthaus weit von hier?

Wie viel bezahlt man, um einen Brief frei zu machen?

Haben Sie meinen Brief auf die Post gegeben?

Haben Sie ihn frei gemacht?

Gehen Sie sogleich auf die Post, und erkundigen Sie sich nach meinen Briefen.

Get these pens mended for me.

Can you make pens.

How do you like to have them? Do you chuse to have them cut fine or blunt?

Neither fine nor blunt. I like them very fine, very blunt.

Are they to your mind?

Give me a penknife. I want to mend a pen.

This penknife won't do.

Where is the inkstand?

Where is the sand-box?

Fetch me some sand.

Do you chuse to have fine sand, or gold dust?

Have you a seal? Fetch me one. Here is mine.

Light a candle; for I must seal up my letters.

Is the post-office far from hence?

How much do they pay for franking a letter?

Have you delivered my letter at the post-office?

Have you franked it?

Go immediately to the post-office and require for my letters.

NINTH DIALOGUE.

On dress.

Neuntes Gespräch.

Ueber die Kleidung.

Ich brauche einen Rock.

I want a coat.

Wollen Sie mir Maaß nehmen?

Will you take my measure?

Haben Sie das Tuch schon gekauft, oder muß ich Alles besorgen?

Have you bought the cloth already, or must I find everything?

Ich weiß nicht, wo gutes Tuch zu bekommen ist: also werde ich es Ihnen überlassen; allein setzen Sie mir nicht zu viel dafür an.

I don't know where to get good cloth: so I shall leave it to you; but pray don't overrate me.

Sie sollen es so gut und so wohlfeil als möglich bekommen.

Sir, you shall have it as good and as cheap as possible.

Wann werde ich meinen Rock bekommen?

When shall I get my coat?

Heberrnorgen.

The day after to morrow.

Sehr wohl; und bringen Sie Ihre Rechnung mit; denn ich werde Sie so gleich bezahlen.

Very well; and bring your bill along with you; for I shall pay you immediately.

Wie theuer verkaufen Sie diesen Zeug?

How do you sell this stuff?

Wie viel kostet die deutsche Elle?

How much does the German ell cost?

Das ist sehr theuer.

That is very dear.

Ich will nicht mehr als ... geben.

I shall give no more than ...

Er ist nicht mehr werth.

It is not worth more.

Sehen Sie zu, ob Sie mir ihn für diesen Preis lassen können. Ich werde zehn Ellen nehmen.

Sie müssen das ganze Stück kaufen.

Schneiden Sie zwölf Ellen ab.

Wollen Sie so gütig seyn und es messen?

Ich wollte gern Tuch kaufen.

Ich hätte gern einen guten englischen Biberhut, einen runden oder dreieckigen Hut.

Hier sind einige sehr feine Hüte. Hier ist einer, der Ihnen, glaube ich, passen wird.

Lassen Sie mich sie sehen.

Ja, diese scheinen gute Hüte zu seyn.

Dieser Hut passet mir nicht, er ist zu enge.

Haben Sie die Güte und versuchen Sie diesen; er ist weiter.

Ja, dieser wird gehen. Wie viel fordern Sie dafür?

Fünf Thaler, mein Herr.

Haben Sie gute Leinwand zu Hemden oder Schnupftüchern?

Hier ist der Schuhmacher, den Sie haben rufen lassen.

Man hat mir gesagt, mein Herr, daß Sie ein Paar Stiefeln brauchen.

Nein, ich brauche keine Stiefeln, sondern bloß ein Paar Schuhe.

Consider whether you can let me have it at that price. I will take ten ells.

You must buy the whole piece.

Cut off twelve ells.

Will you be so kind as to measure it?

I want to buy some cloth.

I want a good English beaver hat, a round or three cornered one.

Here are some very fine hats. Here is one Sir, that I believe will fit you.

Let me see them.

Yes, they seem to be good hats.

This hat does not fit me, it is too narrow.

Please to try this; it is wider.

Yes, this will do. How much do you ask for it?

Five dollars Sir.

Have you any good linen for shirts or handkerchiefs?

Here is the shoemaker Sir, whom you ordered to be called.

I have been told Sir, that you want a pair of boots.

No, I want no boots, but a pair of shoes only.

Haben Sie Schuhe fertig?
Bringen Sie mir einige
Paare von verschiedener
Größe.

Have you any shoes ready
made? Bring me some
pairs of different sizes.

Wie theuer sind diese?

How dear are these?

Ich will sie anprobiren.

I will try them on.

Sie drücken mich.

They pinch me.

Wein Herr, ich werde Ihnen
ein Paar recht gute Schu-
he machen, und übermors-
gen werden Sie dieselben
haben.

Sir, I shall make you a pair
of very good shoes, and
you shall have them the
day after to-morrow.

Befehlen Sie dicke oder dün-
ne Sohlen?

Would you have thin or
thick soles?

Nicht sehr dick.

Not very thick.

Sollen die Absätze hoch oder
niedrig seyn?

Shall the heels be high or
low?

Nicht zu hoch.

Not too high.

Sollen die Riemen breit
oder schmal seyn?

Are the straps to be broad
or small?

Sie müssen zu der Größe
dieser Schnallen passen.

They are to fit the size of
these buckles.

Ich wünsche Pelzschuhe zu
haben. Machen Sie sie
weit genug, daß ich sie über
meine andern Schuhe
bringen kann.

I wish to have shoes lined
with fur. Make them
wide enough, that I may
get them over my other
shoes.

TENTH DIALOGUE.

With a laundress.

Zehntes Gespräch.

Mit einer Wäscherin.

Wann werden Sie meine
Wäsche wiederbringen?

When will you bring my
linen back?

Waschen Sie sie ja mit Sorgfalt.

Ich bitte Sie, keine Stärke daran zu thun, wenn Sie meine Nachthauben waschen.

Meine seidenen Strümpfe müssen ausgebessert werden. Können Sie sie ausbessern?

Dieses Kleid muß gewaschen und geglättet werden.

Bringen Sie schon meine Wäsche?

Ich will meine Wäsche durchzählen: zwei Paar Betttücher; fünfzehn Hemden; drei Röcke; ein Kleid; sechs Paar Strümpfe; vier Nachthauben; zwei Nachthalstücher; sechs Halsbinden; ein Paar Handschuhe; zwei Paar Unterhosen; fünf Schürzen; zwölf Schnupftücher; zwölf Servietten; drei Tischtücher; sechs Handtücher.

Es fehlen zwei Stücke.

Da ist ein Schnupftuch, welches mir nicht gehört; es ist nicht mein Zeichen.

Diese Falten sind nicht gut gemacht. Dies ist schlecht geglättet.

Dieses ist nicht gut gewaschen.

Dieses ist sehr schön gewaschen.

Pray, wash it carefully.

Pray, don't put any starch in washing my night-caps.

My silk stockings must be mended. Can you mend them?

This gown must be washed and calendered.

Bring you my linen already?

I will count over my linen; two pair of sheets; fifteen shirts; three petticoats; one gown; six pair of stockings; four nightcaps; two night neckhandkerchiefs; six cravats; one pair of gloves; two pair of drawers; five aprons; twelve pocket handkerchiefs; twelve napkins; three table cloths; six towels.

There are two pieces wanting.

There is a handkerchief which does not belong to me; it is not my mark.

These folds are not well made. That is badly ironed.

That is not well washed.

This is very nicely washed.

ELEVENTH DIALOGUE.

With a watchmaker.

Elftes Gefpräch.

Mit einem Uhrmacher.

Ich wollte gern eine Taschenuhr kaufen.

Ist diese Uhr gut?

Wollen Sie mir sie auf Probe geben?

Ich werde sie nur unter dieser Bedingung nehmen.

Nehmen Sie die diamantenen Zeiger weg und thun Sie goldene an ihre Stelle.

Meine Uhr ist in Unordnung; ich bitte Sie, sie zu reinigen, und wieder zurecht zu machen, und mir unterdessen eine andere zu leihen.

Ich wollte gern meine Uhr vertauschen.

Wie viel wollen Sie heraus haben?

Sie fordern zu viel. Diese Uhr hat mir zwanzig Louisd'or gekostet, und ist vortrefflich.

Wenn Sie es zufrieden sind, so will ich die Uhr nehmen, die Sie mir zum Tausche anbieten, und Ihnen drei Louisd'or herausgeben.

Ich muß ein neues Glas auf meine Uhr setzen lassen; ich habe mein Uhrglas

I want to purchase a watch.

Is this watch good?

Will you let me have it upon trial?

I will only take it on those terms.

Take the diamond hands away, and put golden ones in their stead.

My watch is out of order; I beg you to clean it and put it to rights again, and in the mean time lent me another.

I should like to swap my watch.

How much do you want back?

You ask too much. This watch has cost me twenty louisd'or, and is an excellent one.

If you are contented, I will take the watch you offer me in exchange and give you three louisd'or into the bargain.

I must get a new glass set to my watch; I have broken my watch glass;

- zerbrochen; ich habe die Feder zerbrochen. I have broken the main spring.
- Diese Uhr geht unrichtig; ist sie aufgezogen worden? This watch goes wrong; has it been wound up?
- Diese Uhr ist viel zu theuer; sie ist nicht schön. This watch is much too dear; it is not fine.
- Ich mache mir nichts aus einer schönen Uhr, wenn sie nur gut ist. I don't regard a fine watch, if it be only a good one.
- Wie heißt der Uhrmacher? How is the watch-maker called?
- Verkaufen Sie Brillen? Do you sell spectacles?
- Verkaufen Sie Operngläser? Do you sell opera glasses?
- Verkaufen Sie Vergrößerungsgläser? Do you sell microscopes?
- Dieses Glas vergrößert die Gegenstände zu sehr. Es vergrößert nicht genug. This glass magnifies the objects too much. It does not magnify enough.
- Dieses Opernglas taugt nichts. This opera glass is good for nothing.



—

9







